SOME IMPROVEMENTS TO THE Art of Teaching,

Especially in the FIRST GROUNDING OF A YOUNG SCHOLAR In Grammar Learning.

Shewing a Short, Sure, and Easie way to bring a SCHOLAR to *Variety* and *Elegancy* in Writing *LATIN*.

Written for the Help and Ease of all *Ushers* of SCHOOLS, and *Country School-Masters*, and for the Use and Profit of all *Younger Scholars*.

The Fourth Edition with many Additions.

BY *WILLIAM WALKER*, B.D.
Author of the Treatise of *Idioms* and *English Particles*.

Fundamento tota domus nititur. Cic.

LONDON,
Printed by *J. M.* for *Thomas Sawbridge*, at the Three *Flower-de-luces* in *Little-Britain*, 1687.

SION COLLEGE
LIBRARY.

EXIMIO,
Integritatis & Honoris
VIRO,
Dno STEPHANO FOXO,
Equiti Aurato, &c.
Scholæ Publicæ *Farleienſis*
In Comitatu Wiltoniæ
FUNDATORI,
Hanc Scholaſticæ Inſtitutionis,
Puerorumque Docendi Artis
Subſtructionem,
Tanquam Gratitudinis Aram,
Benevolentiæque Monumentum,
GUILIELMUS WALKER,
Scholæ Publicæ *Granthamienſis*
In Comitatu Lincolniæ,
A Reverendo olim Præſule,
Dno *Richardo Foxo*,
Wintonienſi Epiſcopo,
Structæ & Dotatæ,
MAGISTER
Dicat, Conſecrat.

THE PREFACE TO THE READER.

Courteous Reader,

TEaching of a Scholar is much like the building of an House: in both there must be a Foundation, *before there can be any* Superstructure: *and accordingly as the Foundation is well, or ill laid, so will the Superstructure be well, or ill built. As great care therefore there ought to be taken in the* Grounding *of Scholars, as in the* Founing *of Houses; nay, a Greater. For, if I may speak my* Experience, *who now have Years enow on my back, to warrant my taking that word into my mouth, this I have found (and who indeed finds not the same?) that as where a Child is at first rightly and thoroughly grounded, the rest of his Work goes on with readineſs, with ease, with speed, and with assurance: so where he is ill grounded, all falls out contrariwise: much labour, and much patience of the Master, and*

and much diligence and industry of the Scholar, will hardly at last, if ever, be able to rescue him from the mischievous consequences of a previous ill grounding. The first Seasoning sticks long by the Vessel; and he will not, without difficulty, learn, at last, to do right, who hath been principled, at first, to do wrong. So that Timotheus *the Musick-Master seems to me to have been much in the right of it, when, demanding double Pay for one that had been initiated into that Art under another Master, he gave this for the Reason of it, because he was to be at double pains, the one of Unteaching him what he had learned wrong, and the other of Teaching him that which he should learn right. Nay, so powerful is ill habit, when once it hath got hold, and so difficult to be eradicated, where it hath taken any deep root, that I have found it much harder to unteach the wrong, than to teach the right. Great Care therefore ought to be taken by* Patrons *of* Schools *in the Choice of those Persons to whom the Scholar's first* Grounding-work *must be committed; and good Conscience ought to be used by those Persons, who take upon them the doing of that Work, lest through want of Ability for, or Integrity in, the discharge of that Duty, they do irreparable damage unto those who are committed to their Charge. And the Consideration of this hath made me look so far back into, and take such pains about the right* Grounding of a Latine Grammar Scholar. *And I would to God some body else would look yet farther back into, and take some pains*

about the right Grounding *even of an* Engliſh Accidence Scholar, *yea of* Primar, *and* A,B,C. *and* Horn-book Scholars: *for generally from, and in, the learning of the very firſt* Rudiments, *and* Elements *of* Literature, *in the very* Reading *and* Spelling, *and* Pronouncing *of* Words, *and* Syllables, *all is out of order, and* Children *are either not* taught, *or wrong* taught, *the very* Pronunciation *of their* Letters, *Conſtitution of* Syllables, *and Compoſition of* Words; *and that ill* Teaching *hath a* potent domination *and a* malignant influence *upon all their future* Learning, *ſome being very difficultly, and ſome never at all, freed from Captivity to that ill habit of* Reading, Spelling *and* Pronouncing, *which they were firſt principled* in, *and inured* unto, *under their Ignorant and Injudicious petit* School-maſters, *and* School-madams; *whoſe Reformation were well worth the Inſpection of* Graveſt Authority: *that ſo our* Noble Language, *towards whoſe Completion all the* beſt *and* learnedeſt *of* Ancient *or* Modern Tongues, *have been liberal* Contributers, *though now debaſed and diſcredited by the ill Teaching of it, might at length be* reformed *and* refined, *and brought by a good* Inſtitution *to that* Perfection, *which it is capable of, and which once attained, I know none that would much excel it.*

But, to return to that which I digreſſed from: having ſpent many, or rather moſt of the beſt years of my life, even the very flower *and* prime *of my days in the Exerciſe of Teaching* Scholars,

and

and that in several both Publick *and* Private *Schools, and having in that time travelled much to find out, by what Means and Methods I might* improve, *to any considerable degree of Advancement,* The Art of Teaching; *and especially in that part of it, which I discerned to be the most necessary to be well minded, and yet found of all other to be the most neglected (I know not whether through the Ignorance or Idleness of some, even too many, Pretending* Teachers) *which is the very first* Grounding *of the Scholar, and laying the* Foundation *of all his future attainments, whether of* Learning *or* Honour; *and having by searching found out something conducible to that end; and having seen the Usefulness thereof in the* experimenting *of it upon such as I have taught; to the end I might save others somewhat of the Labour, which that Search had cost me, and help them forward in that so difficult a* Work, *and yet so necessary to be carefully attended unto by all Conscientious Persons, who take upon themselves the Calling of being Teachers of Children (a Calling every way deserving to be honoured with as great respect, as it is too often treated with contempt, by such as understand neither the* Skill *required to it, nor the* Pains *taken in it, nor the* Benefits *reaped from it, by the whole Church and Kingdom (the Glories whereof do owe their first* Foundation *of all their after* high Superstructions *of* Honour *and Grandeur to it) I did some years ago throw into these Papers those Advices and Counsels to the*

Induſtrious Teacher, *and thoſe Helps and Furtherances to the Studious* Learner, *which if diligently peruſed, and purſued, would (I was well aſſured of it) by the Bleſſing of God, very much eaſe the trouble of the One, and not a little promote the profiting of the Other; ſo as that the One ſhould follow his* Teaching *with delight, and the other proceed in his* Learning *with profit; and Both come off from their ſeveral Employments with Reputation and Credit: Whereof the Calling of this Work now to a* Fourth Edition *may be an Evidence too bright in it ſelf to need a Sun-beam to be brought in for illuſtration of it.*

And now touching the laſt Edition, it is neceſſary that I acquaint you, that it brought with it both ſomething Leſs, *and ſomething* More, *than the Former did.*

Firſt, Something Leſs. *For, having gone thorough the whole* Latine Syntaxis, *fitting* Engliſh Examples *to the Rules of it, after the manner of that* Specimen, *which I gave, of ſuch a Deſign in the former Editions of this Work: and finding it grown too bulky and diſproportionable to the reſt of this Book, to go along with it, and indeed big enough to be a* Book of it ſelf, *as well for that Reaſon, as alſo to make room for* other Additions, *whereof you have part now, and may have more hereafter, I reſolved it ſo ſhould be. And ſo you have by that ſo much the leſs. But then again to compenſate that Defalcation, you have here,*

Second-

Secondly, Something More. *For beſides the many ſeveral* Additions *up and down the* Book, *you have together* Threeſcore and Seven new Engliſh Dialogues, *compoſed of the* Engliſhes *of thoſe two* Collections *of* Latine Phraſes *out of* Hermes Anglo-Latinus, *and* Godwin's Roman Antiquities, *deſigned and done to ſhew the Uſe of* Latine Phraſes, *and to teach the Child by Practice in* Tranſlating *how to uſe them: than which I know nothing, that with more certainty, and greater eaſe both for Maſter and Scholar, nor with greater ſpeed can bring a Child to write Proper, Elegant, and Man-like, or rather* Roman-like Latine. *To which I may add, that the* Matter *of moſt of the later* Set *of* Dialogues (*that out of* Godwin's Antiquities) *is ſuch, as will fill the Child's Head, whilſt he is doing ſomething elſe, and thinking of no ſuch thing, with very much of the* Roman Cuſtoms, *and ſo enable him with greater eaſe to be a Reader of the beſt of* Roman Authors, *and eſpecially of* Cicero, *the Flower and Glory of all* Roman Orators *and* Philoſophers *too. And the more willing am I to promote this kind of* Literature, *becauſe I find, not* Ancient Authors *only, but* Modern Writers *alſo, delighting to* Embroider *their* Language, *and* Embelliſh *their* Style, *with* Phraſes *and* Forms *of* Speech, *alluding to thoſe* Cuſtoms, *as compriſing within them, like* Diamonds *enchaſed in* Bezils *of* Gold, *much at once both of* Beauty *and* Worth, *in ſmall weight and little compaſs.*

And

And now, Courteous Reader, *begging your Pardon for that freedom of* Language *which I have used in this* Preface, *proceeding from a candid Breast, and an uninvidious Soul, whose principal aim in all his* Private Labours *is, next the* Glory of God, *at* Publick Good; *and desiring your Prayers for God's Blessing on this Work, that it may turn to his Honour, His Churches good, and the Advantage of all, who either as* Teachers, *or* Learners, *shall be concerned therein, without further trouble to my self, or you, I end this Discourse, and rest*

YOUR SERVANT

In our one Great Lord

and Master Christ Jesus,

W. W.

A Summary Account Of the enſuing TREATISE.

CHAP. I.

OF *the Forming of Nouns* Page 1
The Engliſh Signs of Caſes to be well known ibid.
The manner of Forming Nouns through every Caſe of every Declenſion 2
Of the various Terminations of ſundry Caſes ibid.
Of the Dative and Ablative Caſe Plural of the Firſt Declenſion. 3
Of the Vocative Singular of the Second Declenſion 4
Of Nouns ending in us *in the Vocative Singular of the Second Declenſion* ibid.
Of [i] *in the Vocative from Nominatives in* us 5
Of ai *and* ei *in the Vocative Singular* ibid.
Of the Accuſative Singular of the Third Declenſion ibid.
Nouns ending in im ibid.
Nouns ending in em *and* im ibid.
Of the Ablative Singular of the Third Declenſion 6

Nouns

Nouns having [i] *in their Ablative Singular* ibid.
The Ablative of Neuters in al ibid. *In* ar ibid. *Ore* ibid.
The Ablative of Adjectives in is *or* er ibid.
The Ablative of Adjectives derived of Proper Names 7
The Ablative of Words having only im *in the Accusative Case* ibid.
Nouns having both e *and* i *in the Ablative Singular* 8
The Ablative Singular of Substantives having em *and* im *in their Accusative* ibid.
The Ablative of Adjectives of one Termination ibid.
Of par *and his Compounds* 9
The Ablative of Adjectives of the Comparative Degree ibid.
Of the Terminations cis *and* is *in the Nominative and Accusative Plural of the Third Declension* ibid.
Of the Nominative and Accusative Plural of the Third Declension in the Neuter Gender 10
What Words of the Third Declension end in a, *and what in* ia ibid.
Of the Genitive Plural of the Third Declension ibid.
What words have ium *in the Genitive Plural* ibid.
The Genitive of words having i *in their Ablative Singular* ibid.
The Genitive Plural of words of two or more Syllables ending with two Consonants 11
The Genitive Plural of Nouns in er, es, *and* is *not increasing* ibid.
The Genitive Plural of Polysyllables increasing in the Genitive Singular 12
The Genitive Plural of several sorts of Monosyllables ibid.
The Genitive Plural in ium *syncopated* 13
Some in ium *have also* orum ibid.
Greek words in ma *having both* um *and* orum *in their Genitive Plural* 14

Of

Of on *in the Genitive Plural* ibid.
Of the Dative Plural of the Third Declenſion ibid.
Neuter Greek Words having both ibus *and* is *in the Dative and Ablative Plural* ibid.
Of the Genitive Singular of the Fourth Declenſion 15
Of Words of the Fourth Declenſion having i *in the Genitive Caſe* ibid. *and* is *and* uis ibid.
Of the Dative Singular of the Fourth Declenſion ibid.
Of Words having u *in the Dative Singular of the Fourth Declenſion* ibid.
Of the Ablative Singular of the Fourth Declenſion 16
Of the Genitive Plural of the Fourth Declenſion ibid.
Of the Dative Plural of the Fourth Declenſion ibid.
Of Words ending in ubus ibid.
——*and both* ubus *and* ibus ibid.
Of the Genitive Singular of the Fifth Declenſion ibid.
Of es *in the Genitive Sing. of the Fifth Declenſ.* ibid.
——*and* i 17. *and* e ibid.
Of e *in the Dative Sing. of the Fifth Declenſion* ibid.

CHAP. II.

Of the Comparing of Adjectivees. The way to learn it ibid.
Of Irregular Compariſons 18
Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Poſitives having a Vowel before us 19
Of Defective Compariſons ibid.
Adjectives wanting the Poſitive Degree 20
Adjectives wanting the Comparative Degree ibid.
Adjectives wanting the Superlative Degree ibid.
Adjectives wanting both the Poſitive and Superlative Degree 21
Of Redundant Compariſons ibid.
Two Superlatives from one Poſitive ibid.
A Comparative formed from a Superlative ibid.
Adjectives not compared 21, 22

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the Forming of Verbs 22
The Tenses formed one from another ibid.
The way to learn to form Verbs 23
The benefit of forming Verbs 24
Of Verbs Defective 25,&c.

CHAP. IV.

Of Translating English into Latine 27
The time for a Scholar to begin to make Latine ibid.
Of Pointing, and Rules for it 27,28
Making Latine best begun with Translating 35
In Translating, the Natural Order of Words to be observed ibid.
General Rules touching the Natural Order of Words 36
Special Rules for the Natural Order of Words ibid.
The way to teach the Natural Order of Words 38
The first entring of a Scholar into Translating ibid.
Directions for making plain Latine ibid.
Directions to bring Children to understand the difficulties about the Relative 47
Of the Ablative Case Absolute 49
What the Teacher is to do with *and* at *his Scholars Translation* 50
Parsing to be performed by the Scholar alone ibid.
Englishes for Translation to be contrived suitable to the Grammar Rules ibid.
Examples of such Englishes in the First Concord 51
in the Second Concord 55
in the Third Concord 57

CHAP. V.

Of the Artificial Order and Elegant placing of Words and Clauses 59 67

CHAP.

CHAP VI.

Of the Use of Phrases 68
How to store a Scholar with Phrases ibid.
A Collection of Phrases out of Hermes Anglo-Latinus 69
A Collection of Phrases out of Godwin's *Antiquities* 80
How to shew the Use of Phrases 94
Thirty four Dialogues composed (in order to the shewing of Children the Use of Phrases) out of, or agreeably to, the Phrases collected out of Hermes Anglo-Latinus 96
Thirty three Dialogues composed out of, or agreeably unto, the Phrases collected out of Godwin's *Antiquities* 113

CHAP. VII.

Of Variation of Phrases 139
Rules of Variation ibid.
How to vary a Verb Active ibid. *Passive* ibid.
Ablative Case Absolute 140
Adjective with res ibid.
Adjective of the Neuter Gender ibid.
Latter of two Substantives ibid.
Adjective Absolute in the Neuter with his Genitive Case 141
Adjective with his Substantive wherewith he agrees ibid.
Accusative Case before the Infinitive Mood ibid.
Nominative Case with his Verb, and quod *or* ut ib.
Habeo 142
Genitive Case with his own Partitive ibid.
Genitive Case after a Superlative Degree ibid.
Infinitive Mood Active ibid.
Infinitive Passive after an Adjective 143
Comparative Degree ibid.
Superlative Degree ibid.
Single Words 144
Sentences 147

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Elegancy of the Particles 149
Particles elegantly used, where other Expressions are not elegant 150
Particles elegantly used for others, which are not unelegant 152
Particles elegantly used in contexture together with others 157

CHAP. IX.

Of the Idioms of English and Latine 166
How to bring a Scholar to render English Proprieties according to the Propriety of the Latine ibid.
Ten English Dialogues consisting of Idiomatical Expressions contrived on purpose for Translation, and to bring Children off from the baldness of a Verbal Translation to a more Elegant way of Writing 169
One English Dialogue, with a threefold Latine Translation of it, to exemplifie variety of elegant Translations of the same English Idiom 178

Errata.

Pag. 178. Col. 2. l. 1. *l. qui.* p. 180. col. 1. l. penult. *conscia*

THE ART OF TEACHING,

Improved in the grounding of a young Scholar in the Latine TONGUE.

CHAP. I.

Of the Forming of Nouns.

INtending to write, not upon every thing, that is to be performed by the *Teacher*, or prescribed to the *Learner*, of the *Latine Tongue*, but only on some *particular Observables*, conducing to the *Grounding of a young Scholar* therein, I begin with that which is both most *necessary*, and most *useful*, the *Declining*, or *Forming of Nouns*: touching which the Directions to the *Teacher* are as follow.

Non ut omnia dicerem, sectatus, quod infinitum erat; sed ut maximè necessaria. Quint. l. 1. c. 9.

First, In the learning of the Declensions of Nouns make your Scholars to attend unto, and be expert in the *English signs* of every several Case, by making them together with the Latine Nouns, which they decline, to give the English: thus, Nom. *Musa*, a song, Gen. *Musæ of* a song, Dat. *Musæ to* a song, Acc. *Musam*, *a*, or *the* song, *&c.* This initiates them in the Practice of rendring *Latine into English*.

Secondly, Use them not only to give the English for the Latine, but also, *vice versâ*, the Latine for the English: thus, Nom. song, *Musa*, Gen. Of a song, *Musæ*. Dat. To a song, *Musæ*, &c.

This initiates them in the skill of turning *Engliſh into Latine.*

Thirdly, Practiſe them in declining forwards and backwards (*i. e.* Latine before Engliſh, and Engliſh before Latine) *Subſtantives and Adjectives*, firſt of like *Termination* in all Caſes: as *Muſa jucunda*: then of *unlike Termination*; firſt in *fewer* Caſes, as, *dies ſplendens*; then in *more*, as, *Poeta doctus*, *lapis pretioſus*, *ficus pulla*, &c. and ſo far as may be done in all Declenſions. This Exerciſe, as being directly the practice of all the *ſecond Concord* will be of very great uſe to them in making of Latine.

N. B. It will be of great uſe to the purpoſes aforeſaid, to put them to the forming of *Engliſh Subſtantives*, firſt *alone* without Adjectives; thus, Nom. *a* houſe, Gen. *of* a houſe, *&c.* then *together* with Adjectives; thus, Nom. *a* fair houſe, Gen. *of a* fair houſe, *&c.*

Fourthly, When they are perfect in the *Terminations* of the Caſes of every Declenſion *ſeverally*, then exerciſe them in giving the *Terminations* of every Caſe throughout all the Declenſions together: after this manner.

The Terminations of all the Caſes in every Declenſion.

The *Genitive* Caſe Singular of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *æ*, as *Muſæ*; of the *Second* in *i*, as *Magiſtri*; of the *Third* in *is*, as *Lapidis*; of the *Fourth* in *us*, as *Manus*; of the *Fifth* in *ei*, as *Diei.*

The *Dative* Caſe Singular of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *æ*, as *Muſæ*; of the *Second* in *o*, as *Magiſtro*; of the *Third* in *i*, as *Lapidi*; of the *Fourth* in *ui*, as *Manui*; of the *Fifth* in *ei*, as *Diei.*

The *Accuſative* Caſe Singular of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *am*, as *Muſam*; of the *Second* in *um*, as *Magiſtrum*; of the *Third* in *em*, as *Lapidem*, or in *im*, as *Sitim*, or in both *em* and *im*, as *Febrem* and *Febrim*; of the *Fourth* in *um*, as *Manum*; of the *Fifth* in *em*, as *Diem.*

The *Vocative* is like the *Nominative*: except in *ſome* Nouns of the *Second* Declenſion ending in *us* or *ius*, whoſe Vocative reſpectively ends in *e*, or *i*; as Nom. *Dominus*, Voc. *Domine.* Nom. *Filius*, Voc. *Fili.*

The *Ablative* Caſe Singular of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *â*, as *Muſâ*; of the *Second* in *o*, as *Magiſtro*; of the *Third* in *e*, as *Lapide*, or in *i*, as *Siti*, or in both *e* and *i*, as *Febre* and *Febri*; of the *Fourth* in *u*, as *Manu*; of the *Fifth* in *e*, as *Die.*

The *Nominative* Caſe Plural of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *æ*, as *Muſæ*; of the *Second* in *i*, as *Magiſtri*; of the *Third* in *es*, as *Lapides*; of the *Fourth* in *us*, as *Manus*; of the *Fifth* in *es*, as *Dies.*

The

The *Genitive* Case Plural of the *First* Declension ends in *arum*, as *Musarum*; of the *Second* in *orum*, as *Magistrorum*; of the *Third* in *um*, as *Lapidum*, or in *ium*, as *Febrium*; of the *Fourth* in *uum*, as *Manuum*; of the *Fifth* in *erum*, as *Dierum*.

The *Dative* Case Plural of the *First* Declension ends in *is*, as *Musis*, or in *abus*, as *Mulabus*, or in both *is* and *abus*, as *Filiis* and *Filiabus*; of the *Second* in *is*, as *Magistris*; of the *Third* in *ibus*, as *Lapidibus*; of the *Fourth* either in *ibus*, as *Manibus*, or in *ubus*, as *Artubus*, or in both *ibus* and *ubus*, as *Veribus* and *Verubus*; of the *Fifth* in *ebus*, as *Diebus*.

The *Accusative* Case Plural of the *First* Declension ends in *as*, as *Musas*; of the *Second* in *os*, as *Magistros*; of the *Third* in *es*, as *Lapides*; of the *Fourth* in *us*, as *Manus*; of the *Fifth* in *es*, as *Dies*.

The *Vocative* Case Plural is like the *Nominative*; and the *Ablative* is like the *Dative* in all Declensions.

Note, That all Nouns of the *Neuter Gender* of what *Declension* soever, and in what *Termination* soever, have their *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* alike in *both Numbers*: and in the *Plural* Number do end all in *a*: except *ambo* and *duo*, and words undeclinable, as *centum*, *viginti*, *mille*, *tot*, &c.

Of the various Terminations of Cases in several Declensions.

In the Declensions it is visible, that there be several Cases, which admit of a *variety of Terminations*. Now for as much as it may be very useful to Learners to know something of *Certainty* in that *Variety*, I shall here for that cause give the Reader some account thereof.

The *Genitive* Singular of the *First* Declension is found to have ended sometimes in *as*, in imitation of the Greeks, as *Paterfamilias*, *Filius-familias*.

Thence, *Meretrix & materfamiliâs erit una in domo.* Ter. Ad. 4. 7. *Dux ipse viâs.* Enn. *Mercurius, cúmque eo, Filius Latonâs.* Liv. Andron. *Filii terrâs.* Næv. *Nec aurâs nec sonitûs memor.* Virg.

And sometimes in *ai*, as *aulai*, *pictai*.

Thence, *Dives opum, dives pictai vestis & auri.* Virg. *Nomen dare vobis volo Comœdiai.* Plaut. Pœn. Prol.

Some Nouns of the *First Declension* do end in *abus* in the *Dative* and *Ablative* Case *Plural*. *Of the Dative and Ablative Plur. of the First Declension.*

The Examples hereof producible would, if doubted, clearly evince it. The Ground of adding this Termination in *abus* to that in *is*, was to distinguish the words that are so declined, from other words of a near signification, whose Dative and Ablative Plural end in *is*.

The words that have *abus* in the Dative and Ablative Plu are,

Filia, nata, Dea, liberta, equa, serva,
Mula, asina, socia, anima, conserva.

Of which *Mula* and *Liberta* are hardly, if ever, read in any oth Termination but *abus*: the reſt are found to have both *is* and a *Juſtin. lib.* 7. hath. *Adhibitis in convivium ſuum filiis, & u ribus, & filiabus.* Plaut. Stich. ac. 4. *Sed ego ibo intro, & gra labor veſtrum adventum filiis.* So *Pœn.* 4. 5. 3 9. *Salve, Han inſperatiſſime mihi tuiſque filiis* for *filiabus.* Cic. pro Cornel. *Jove Optimo Maximo cæteriſque Diis, Deabúſque omnibus opem auxilium petamus.* *Varro de R. R. l.* 3. *c.* 16. (ſpeaking of *Muſes*, whoſe Birds the *Bees* were ſaid to be, ſaith) *His Diis licona atque Olympum attribuerunt homines.* *Palladius* ſpeakin the Month of *March* ſaith, *Hoc menſe ſaginati ac paſti antè adn ſarii generoſis equabus admittendi ſunt.* *Varro de R. R. l.* 2. *c.* ſpeaking of the *Mares* in *Luſitania*, which are ſaid to conceive the wind, ſaith, *Sed ex his equis qui nati puſti, non plus trienn vivunt.* See more in *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 4. *Alvar. In Gram.* p. 196. *Voſſ. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 31. *Rhen. Gram. Lat.* 47. *Hayne Lat. Gram.* p. 15. *Ram. Lat. Gram.* l. 1. c. 7, *nab. Lat. Gram.* p. 7.

Of the Vocative Caſe of the Second Declenſion.

Nouns of the *Second Declenſion* ending in *us* in the *Nomina* Caſe, do end in *e* in the *Vocative.*

This is too apparent to be doubted. Even in other Ten nations anciently the Vocative Caſe was diſtinguiſhed from Nominative. Whence *puere* for *puer* is cited by *Priſcian l.* 7. of *Cæcilius* and *Afranius.* *Age, age puere, Duce me ad patrios p decoratum opiparé.* And *O pueve, puere, ſine me proſpicere mihi*

But whether any Nouns ending in *us* in the Nominative end alſo in *us* in the Vocative, may be a doubt.

In *Sidonius Carm.* 22. we may read——*Naiadas iſtic Nereid chorus alme doce.* In *Liv. l.* 1. *ann.* U. C. is read, *Audi Jupi audi pater patrate populi Albani, audi tu populus Albanus.* Bu theſe, and the like Examples, either there is a *Græciſm*: (fo the *Attic Dialect* the Nom. and Voc. end both alike) or an *El lage* of the *Caſe*, the Nom. being put for the Voc. whereof th be many Examples both in *Subſtantives* and *Adjectives*, wh yet are not therefore ſaid to have a Voc. in *e* and in *us.* As *Vi 1. Æn. Adſis lætitiæ Bacchus dator* —— Perſ. 1. Sat. *Vos ô pa cius ſanguis.*—— Inſomuch that even *Deus* in the Voc. Caſe h *Atticiſm.* As Θεὸς in *Greek* is uſed for Θεὲ, which is alſo rea ſo is *Deus* in Latine uſed for *Dee*, which is read alſo in Eccle ſtical Writers. *Tertul. l.* 1 *adverſ. Marcion. Gratus eſſes, O hæreticè, ſi eſſes in diſpoſitionem Creatoris.* So *Prudent. in Ha rigenia, C Dee cunctiparens, animæ dator, O Dee Chriſte.* So

the proper Terminations of Nouns in *us* of the Second Declenſion in their Voc. is *e*: the other in *us* is figurative. Only *vulgus* hath both *e* and *us*: but *e* as a Maſculine, *us* as a Neuter: unleſs the Voc. in *us* be remaining of the old declining of this word of the *Fourth Declenſion*: whence *Chariſius* cites from *Varro*, *A vulgu condemnaretur.*

The ſame may be ſaid touching thoſe in *ius* with a Vowel or ſimple *i* before *us*, whether Proper or Common, which now end in *i* in the Voc. Caſe: their proper Termination is *e*; which being cut off by an *Apocope*, ſo they come to end in *i*.

As *fluvie* and *ſocie* is read, ſo was alſo *filie* and *Genie*, *Antonie*, and *Virgilie*: of which the *e* being by an *Apocope* cut off, there is now remaining in uſe only *fili*, *Geni*, &c. But *Perſonal Adjectives* ſtill retain the proper Termination in *e*: as *Cynthiùs*, *Cynthie*, *Delius*, *Delie*, &c. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* lib. 2. cap. 5. Erras, inquit, tabellarie. *Cic. ap. Quintil. l. 9. c. 3.*

As for thoſe that end in *ius* with a Conſonant *j*, or a Diphthong *ai* or *ei* before *us*, ſuch as *Cajus*, *Majus*, *Pompejus*, *Vultejus*, their Termination is *i*.

This Voc. is formed of the Nom. by putting away *us*, and either reſolving the Diphthong into its Vowels, or turning the Conſonant *j* into *i* Vowel. Unleſs any, ſuppoſing it to be a Diphthong that in theſe words preceeds *us*, will have the Voc. Caſe to end in that Diphthong: as indeed *Pompei* and *Vultei* of two Syllables may be read. *Hor. Od. 7. l. 2. Pompei meorum prime ſodalium*: and *Ep. 7. l. 1. Durus ait, Vultei, nimis attentúſq; videris.* However now uſe reſolves the Diphthong. Hence *Martial. l. 10. Ep. 16. Si donare voces promittere, nec dare, Cai.* And *Auſon. de Menſib. Maja Dea, an major, Mai, te fecerit ætas, Ambigo.* See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 5, & 20.

Of the *Accuſative* Caſe Singular of the *Third Declenſion* the ordinary Termination is *em*: yet there are ſome that end only in *im*: and ſome that end both in *em* and *im*. *Of the Accuſat. Sing. of the Third Declenſion.*

Theſe end only in *im*.

Vis, *ravis*, *ſitis*, *charybdis*, *tuſſis*,
Mephitis, *cannabis*, *magudaris*, and *amuſſis*,
Præſepis, *Syrtis*, *Opis*, *pelvis*, *buris*,
Sinapis, *cucumis*, *Leucaſpis*, and *ſecuris*.
Albis, *Fabaris*, *Bætis*, *Tanais*, and *Tigris*,
Araris, *Atheſis*, *Ligeris*, *Tiberis*, and *Tibris*.

So *Halys* hath *Halym* and *Halyn*.

Theſe end both in *em* and *im*.

Aqualis, *cutis*, *turris*, *reſtis*, *navis*,
Sementis, *puppis*, *bipennis*, *febris*, *clavis*.

But in theſe *febris*, *navis*, *aqualis*, and *clavis*, *em* is the more uſual Termination: as is alſo *im* in theſe three, *puppis*, *reſtis*, and *turris*: to which may be added *ſtrigilis*.

The words that have *abus* in the Dative and Ablative Plu
are,

Filia, nata, Dea, liberta, equa, serva,
Mula, asina, socia, anima, conserva.

Of which *Mula* and *Liberta* are hardly, if ever, read in any oth
Termination but *abus*: the rest are found to have both *is* and *a*

Justin. lib. 7. hath. *Adhibitis in convivium suum filiis, & n*
rlibus, & filiabus. Plaut. Stich. ac. 4. *Sed ego ibo intro, & gra*
labor vestrum adventum filiis. So *Pœn.* 4. 5. 3. 9. *Salve, Han*
insperatissime mihi tuisque filiis for *filiabus.* Cic. pro Cornel.
Jove Optimo Maximo cæterisque Diis, Deabusque omnibus opem
auxilium petamus. Varro de R. R. l. 3. *c.* 16. (speaking of
Muses, whose Birds the *Bees* were said to be, saith) *His Diis*
licona atque Olympum attribuerunt homines. Palladius speaking
the Month of *March* saith, *Hoc mense saginati ac pasti antè ad*
sarii generosis equabus admittendi sunt. Varro de R. R. l. 2. *c.*
speaking of the *Mares* in *Lusitania*, which are said to conceive
the wind, saith, *Sed ex his equis qui nati pulli, non plus trienn*
vivunt. See more in *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 4. *Alvar. Ins*
Gram. p. 196. *Voss. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 31. *Rhen. Gram. Lat.*
47. *Hayne Lat. Gram.* p. 15. *Ram. Lat. Gram.* l. 1. c. 7, F
nab. Lat. Gram. p. 7.

Of the Vocative Case of the Second Declension.

Nouns of the *Second Declension* ending in *us* in the *Nominat* Case, do end in *e* in the *Vocative.*

This is too apparent to be doubted. Even in other Ter nations anciently the Vocative Case was distinguished from Nominative. Whence *puere* for *puer* is cited by *Priscian l.* 7. of *Cæcilius* and *Afranius. Age, age puere, Duce me ad patrios p decoratum opiparé.* And *O puere, puere, sine me prospicere mihi*

But whether any Nouns ending in *us* in the Nominative end also in *us* in the Vocative, may be a doubt.

In *Sidonius Carm.* 22. we may read——*Naiadas istic Nereid chorus alme doce.* In *Liv.* l. 1. *ann.* U. C. is read, *Audi Jupi audi pater patrate populi Albani, audi tu populus Albanus.* Bu these, and the like Examples, either there is a *Grecism*: (fo the *Attic Dialect* the Nom. and Voc. end both alike) or an *El lage* of the *Case*, the Nom. being put for the Voc. whereof th be many Examples both in *Substantives* and *Adjectives*, wh yet are not therefore said to have a Voc. in *e* and in *us.* As *V* 1. *Æn. Adsis lætitiæ Bacchus dator* —— Pers. 1. Sat. *Vos ô pa cius sanguis.*— Insomuch that even *Deus* in the Voc. Case h *Atticism.* As Θεὸς in *Greek* is used for Θεὲ, which is also rea so is *Deus* in Latine used for *Dee*, which is read also in Eccle stical Writers. *Tertul.* l. 1 *adverss. Marcion. Gratus esses, O hæretice, si esses in dispositionem Creatoris.* So *Prudent. in Ham tigenia, C Dee cunctiparens, animæ dator, O Dee Christe.* So

the proper Terminations of Nouns in *us* of the Second Declenſion in their Voc. is *e*: the other in *us* is figurative. Only *vulgus* hath both *e* and *us*: but *e* as a Maſculine, *us* as a Neuter: unleſs the Voc. in *us* be remaining of the old declining of this word of the *Fourth Declenſion*: whence *Chariſius* cites from *Varro*, *A vulgu condemnaretur.*

The ſame may be ſaid touching thoſe in *ius* with a Vowel or ſimple *i* before *us*, whether Proper or Common, which now end in *i* in the Voc. Caſe: their proper Termination is *e*; which being cut off by an *Apocope*, ſo they come to end in *i*.

As *fluvie* and *ſocie* is read, ſo was alſo *filie* and *Genie*, *Antonie*, and *Virgilie*: of which the *e* being by an *Apocope* cut off, there is now remaining in uſe only *fili*, *Geni*, &c. But *Perſonal Adjectives* ſtill retain the proper Termination in *e*: as *Cynthius*, *Cynthie*, *Delius*, *Delie*, &c. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* lib. 2. cap. 5. Erras, inquit, tabellarie. *etc. ap. Quintil. l. 9. c. 3.*

As for thoſe that end in *ius* with a Conſonant *j*, or a Diphthong *ai* or *ei* before *us*, ſuch as *Cajus*, *Majus*, *Pompejus*, *Vultejus*, their Termination is *i*.

This Voc. is formed of the Nom. by putting away *us*, and either reſolving the Diphthong into its Vowels, or turning the Conſonant *j* into *i* Vowel. Unleſs any, ſuppoſing it to be a Diphthong that in theſe words preceeds *us*, will have the Voc. Caſe to end in that Diphthong: as indeed *Pompei* and *Vultei* of two Syllables may be read. *Hor. Od. 7. l. 2. Pompei meorum prime ſodalium*: and *Ep. 7. l. 1. Durus ait, Vultei, nimis attentúſq; videris.* However now uſe reſolves the Diphthong. Hence *Martial. l. 10. Ep. 16. Si donare vocas promittere, nec dare, Cæi.* And *Auſon. de Menſib. Maja Dea, an major, Mai, te fecerit ætas, Ambigo.* See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 5, & 20.

Of the *Accuſative* Caſe Singular of the *Third Declenſion* the ordinary Termination is *em*: yet there are ſome that end only in *im*: and ſome that end both in *em* and *im*. *Of the Accuſat. Sing. of the Third Declenſion.*

Theſe end only in *im*.

Vis, *ravis*, *ſitis*, *charybdis*, *tuſſis*,
Mephitis, *cannabis*, *magudaris*, and *amuſſis*,
Præſepis, *Syrtis*, *Opis*, *pelvis*, *buris*,
Sinapis, *cucumis*, *Leucaſpis*, and *ſecuris*.
Albis, *Fabaris*, *Bætis*, *Tanais*, and *Tigris*,
Araris, *Atheſis*, *Ligeris*, *Tiberis*, and *Tibris*.

So *Halys* hath *Halym* and *Halyn*.

Theſe end both in *em* and *im*.

Aqualis, *cutis*, *turris*, *reſtis*, *navis*,
Sementis, *puppis*, *bipennis*, *febris*, *clavis*.

But in theſe *febris*, *navis*, *aquilis*, and *clavis*, *em* is the more uſual Termination: as is alſo *im* in theſe three, *puppis*, *reſtis*, and *turris*: to which may be added *ſtrigilis*.

This is reckoned by *Daneſius* amongſt them that have, and is acknowledged by *Voſſius* to have had, *em*, as well as *im*. *Daneſ. Schol.* p. 47. *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2 p. 302.

Of the Abl. Caſe Sing. of the Third Declenſion. Nouns ending only in ĭ in their Abl. Sing.

Of the *Ablative* Caſe Singular of the *Third Declenſion* *e* is the ordinary and regular Termination: yet there are ſome that end in *i*; and ſome that have both *e* and *i* in the Ablative Caſe.

Of Nouns that make their Ablative in *i* only there are theſe ſorts.

1. *Neuters* in *al* increaſing long in their Genitive Caſe, have only *i* in their Ablative; as *Animal*, Gen. *Animalis*, Abl. *animali*.

Yet *hoc Sal* hath *Sale*: but that may be the Ablat. of *hic Sal*, which is far the more uſual, beſides that the *penultima* of it is ſhort.

2. *Neuters* in *ar*, if their laſt Syllable but one in their Gen. Caſe be by Nature *long*, do in their Ablat. only end in *i*: as *Calcar*, Gen. *Calcaris*, Abl. *Calcari*. But if the laſt Syllable but one of their Gen. Caſe be either *ſhort*, as *hepar*, Gen. *hepatis*: or but long by *Poſition*, as *far*, Gen. *farris*, then the Ablat. ends in *e*, as *hepate*, *farre*.

Yet *Poets* ſometimes form an Ablat. in *e*, of Nouns producing their laſt Syllable ſave one: as *Virg. in Culice*——*Si nitor auri Sub laqueare domûs animum non tangit avarum.*

3. *Declinable Neuter Appellatives* in *e*, have their Ablat. ending in *i*; as *cubile*, Abl. *cubili*; ſo *aplueſire*, Abl. *aplueſiri*.

Gauſape is read in the Abl. Caſe, but that is becauſe *gauſape* in the Nominative is an undeclinable word. Hence *Plin.* l. 8. c. 48. *Nam tunicâ laticlavi in modum gauſape texi nunc primùm incipit*: who a little before had uſed the ſame word in the Nomin. *Antiquis enim torus è ſtramento erat, qualiter etiam nunc in caſtris gauſape.* Or if it be the Ablative Caſe here alſo, yet in that of *Perſ.* 4. *Sat.* it is not, *Tu cum maxillis balanatum gauſape pectas.* So *præſape* in the Abl. is from the undeclinable *præſepe* in the Nominat. *Ovid* hath *mare* in the Ablat. Caſe, *l.* 5. *Triſt. El.* 2. *Exiguum plenis de mare demat aquæ.* And *de Pont. l.* 4. *El.* 6. *Euxino de mare vertet iter.* So *Plaut. Nam ſi à mare abſtinuiſſem*, as ſome Copies read it. It would be very ſparingly, if it all uſed. *Rete* is read in the Ablat. but that is from the old Nom. *retis*. Theſe *proper Names* in *e* are ſaid to have *e* in the Abl. viz. *Præneſte*, *Cære*, *Bovillæ*, *Nepete*, *Reate*, *Soracte*. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 11. But *Daneſius* thinks them not to appertain to the preſent conſideration, as being undeclinable words, as *Alvar.* alſo ſaith, *Gram. Acad.* p. 211. Though *Soracte* may come of *Soractis*: for *Plin.* hath *Sacrificio annuo, quod ſit ad montem Soractem.* l. 7. c. 2. See *Daneſ. Schol.* l. 1. c. 13.

4. *Adjectives* in *is* and *er* having their Neuters in the Nom. Caſe ending in *e*, do in their Abl. end in *i*: as Nom. *fortis*, *forte*: Abl. *forti*. So Nom. *acer*, *acre*: Abl. *acri*.

Hither

Hither refer names of *Months*, as *Aprilis Aprili*, *December Decembri*, as being in their nature Adjectives. Hither refer also *memor memori*, and *immemor immemori*, as coming from *memoris*, *immemoris*. Yet *Ovid* hath used *cœleste* and *bimestre* in the Abl. Case. See *Alvar.* p. 211. *Danes. Schol.* l. 1. c. 13. and *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 11. which last, out of *Charisius* cites in the Abl. Case (from *Pomponius*) *humile rege*; and *incolume illo*; and *cum contubernale pugnavi*; and from *Cicero*, *Quo stante & incolume*: and *aliquo excellente & nobile viro*; from *Nepos*, *Virgine Vestale*; and from *Salust*, *agreste*.

But proper Names derived of Adjectives in *is* have *e* in their Ablat.

So *Martial.* l. 7. Ep. 23. *Cum Juvenale meo*— Cic. pro Planc. *Confiteor summa in Latorense ornamenta esse.* So *Annalis*, *Cerealis*, *Vitalis*, *Natalis*, *Nobilis*, *Celeris*, *Apollinaris*. See *Voss. de Analog.* lib. 2. cap. 11.

Affinis, *rivalis*, *familiaris*, *contubernalis*, *popularis*, *sodalis*, *ædilis*, *annalis*, *biremis*, *natalis*, and *bipennis* have their Ablatives properly in *i*, as being originally Adjectives: though again being used Substantively, they have sometimes an Abl. in *e*. *Volucris* the Substantive hath *e*, the Adjective *i*. *Rudis* the Substantive hath *e*, the Adjective *i*. See *Danes.* and *Voss. loc. sup. cit.*

5. Words ending only in *im* in the Accusative Case end only in *i* in their Ablative Case: as Accusat. *vim*, Abl. *vi*. So Accusat. *ravim*, Ablat. *ravi*.

Yet *Liv.* hath *Superato Bœte amne*, from *Bœtim*. *Boëth.* l. 3. *de Cons. Phil. Carm.* 12. hath *longâ site perditus*, from *sitim*: but by Poetical Licence, as saith *Marmelius*. *Pers. Sat.* 5. hath, *Tibi tortâ cannabe fulto Cœna sit in transtro*: from *cannabim*.

Words of a *Greek Original* increasing in the Gen. Case, and having two Terminations in the Accus. one in *em*, and another in *im*, (as *Thetis*, Gen. *Thetidos*, Acc. *Thetidem* and *Thetim*) rather have *e* than *i* (as *Thetide*, rather than *Theti*.) So *Daphnide*, not *Daphni*, &c. Because the Ablat. follows the Dat. (not the Accus.) which in Greek words are the same: the Dative standing for both.

Yet Plaut. Epid. 1. 1. *hath* Theti *in the Abl.* Tum ille prognatus Theti, &c.

Arare in *Cæs.* l. 1. *Bel. Gal.* is not from *Araris*, which makes *Arari*: but from *Arar*, which he in the same Book useth. *Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Æduorum in Rhodanum influit.*

Vossius to those that end in *i* only adds *canalis* and *strigilis*, l. 2. *de Analog.* c. 11. p. 297. proving, their Termination from *Quintil. Plin. Hor.* and adding as his Reason, *Quid mirum, quando Accusativum, uti ostensum, per* im *efferunt?* Yet afterwards (see c. 12. p. 302. having from *Hor.* and *Cic.* proved, that there is *nave* and *navi*, as *navem* and *navim*, he adds, *etiam ut strigilem & strigilim dixêre, sic strigile & strigili*; citing for *strigile*, *Plin.*

Secund. out of *Chariſ.* as *Horace* for *ſtrigili.* I ſuppoſe he means that *ſtrigili* is now only in uſe, though *ſtrigile* were formerly uſed: or that it may be more ſafely uſed, as in deed he explicates himſelf, *p.* 303 ſaying, *Interim tutius ſtrigili per* i *uſurpatur.*

Nouns ending both in e *and* i *in their Abl. Sing.*

Of *Nouns that have both* e *and* i in their Abl. Caſe there are theſe ſorts.

1. Subſtantives, which have in their Accuſ. both *em* and *im*, have in their Ablat. both *e* and *i*: as Acc. *puppem* and *puppim*, Abl. *puppe* and *puppi*.

There are alſo found ſometimes theſe Ablatives in *i* of words that have alſo a more uſual Ablat. in *e*, *viz.*

Claſſi, colli, fini, fuſti,
Igni, imbri, vecti, poſti,
Orbi, ovi, civi, avi,
Ungui, parti, ſarſari, navi,
Supellectili and *ſordi,*
With *occipiti* and *ſorti.*

Of theſe there be Examples in *Voſſ. de Analog.* c. 12. *Danet. Schol* lib. 1. cap. 13. and *Alvar. Inſtit. Gram.* pag. 211. *Cic. Fam.* 1. 9.—*Declaraſſet, ſe non potuiſſe me uno civi carere.* Cic. Fam. 1. 9. p 7. *Signifero ſolet ex orbi*—Cic. in Arat. p. 603. *Nihil porrò igni vacuum videri poteſt.* Cic. Timæ. 4.

To theſe add *Veneri* in *Plaut. Pœn.* 1. 2. *Dignum* [*ſcil. diem*] *Veneri, pol, cui ſunt Aphrodiſia hodie.*

Others beſide are named, viz. *Affinitati, alipedi, angui, aſſi, cani, labi, luci, mani, mugili, nepti, ſtercori, tempori, veſperi,* but not with like Authenticknes either for Author or Edition.

Thoſe Proper names of Places, *Carthagini, Sidoni, Lacedæmoni, Tiburi, Sicyoni, Anxuri,* &c. as alſo the Appellative, *vuri*, miſtaken to be Datives, are *old Ablatives* in *i*, of words that have other uſual Ablatives in *e*. See *Voſſ. de. Conſtruct.* c. 46.

2. *Adjectives of one Termination* in the Nominative have *e* and *i* in their Ablative: as Nom. *felix*: Abl. *felice* vel *felici.* Nom. *vetus*, Abl. *vetere* vel *veteri.* Nom. *recens.* Abl. *recente* vel *recenti.* Nom. *Arpinas*, Abl. *Arpinate* vel *Arpinati.* Though in this laſt ſort *e* is moſt uſual.

N. B. Hither refer *Participles* and *Participials* in *ns*: as Nom. *excellens*, Abl. *excellente* and *excellenti.* Nom. *ardens*, Abl. *ardente* and *ardenti*: unleſs they be put *abſolute*, for then the Termination *e* is to be uſed, not *i*: as *Imperante Auguſto*, not *Imperanti.*

Hither alſo refer *vigil* and *artifex* uſed *Adjectively*, as being then found to have an Ablative alſo in *i.*

So *Stat. Achil.* *Aſpicit intentam vigili; hæc aure trahentem.* Ib. *Qualiter artifici viſturæ pollice cereæ Accipiant formas.*

So alſo *uber* and *degener*, *dives* and *locuples.*

For *Curtius* l. 3. hath *uberi* and *pingui ſolo.* And *Lucan.* l. 4. *Si*

Si me degeneri straviſſent facta ſub hoſte. Plin. l. 3. c. 1. *Diviti cultu.* And *Cic.* 3. *de Orat. Locupleti oratione.*

Laſtly, Hither refer *victrix* and *ultrix*, which have *e* and *i*. *Ovid.* 1. *Faſt. Dextrâ cecidit victrice.* Lucan. l. 1. *In ſua victrici converſum viſcera ferro.* And ſaith *Voſſius*, *Par ratio in* ultrix, *Priſciano teſte.*

But *par* the Adjective (as being anciently *paris*) hath only *pari*, as *par* the Subſtantive (for a mate or fellow) hath *pare*: and yet the Compounds *compar* and *impar* have both *e* and *i*.

And ſo Verbals in *trix* taken *Subſtantively* have only *e*, as *Nutrix, netrix, obſtetrix, ce.* See *Alvar.* p. 211 *Daneſ. Schol.* p. 50, 51. *Voſſ. Etym. Lat.* p. 47, 48. & *de Analog.* l. 2. c. 12.

3. Adjectives of the *Comparative Degree*, as well Maſculines and Feminines, as Neuters, have their Abl. in *e* and *i*; as Nom. *major* and *majus*, Abl. *majore* and *majori*.

Hence *Cæſ.* l. 2. *de Bel. civ. Majori cum fiduciâ pugnaverunt.* And *Sen. Ep.* 108. *Quantum majori impetu ad philoſophiam juvenis acceſſerim, quàm.*—— Indeed Maſcul. and Neut. anciently were both of one Termination in the Nom. whence *Priſcian* l. 7. cites *Senatuſconſultum prior*; and *Bellum poſterior*, from the Ancients.

Though *e* is the more uſual Termination, eſpecially in the Maſc and Femin. Gender, unleſs in Poets.

The *Nominative* and *Accuſative Plural* of the *Third Declenſion* in the Maſc. and Fem. Gender do end in *es*, as *Lapides, Virtutes.* *Of the Nom. and Accuſ. Plur of the Third Declenſion in the Maſc. and Fem. Gender.*

Anciently they did uſe a Termination in *eis*, as *omneis, Sardeis*, which again they contracted into *is*, as *omnis* and *Sardis.*

Hence *Cic. de Opt. Gen. Orat. Qualeis Aſia multos tulit.* Ib. *Virtis, Lacertos, ſanguinem querunt.* Plaut. Amph. 5. 1. *Facit rectà in anguis impetum.* And *Epid.* 2. *Ipſum ante ædis conſpicor.* Ib. 3. 4. *Promerui, ut mihi omnes mortalis deceat agere gratias.* Plaut. Pœn. 5. 5. *Efferte fuſtis.*

Touching which it is exceeding difficult and operous, if poſſible, to give certain Rules; Authors following rather the judgment of the Sound by their ear, than any Rule. See *Gell.* l. 13. c. 19. Yet *Priſcian* attempts it, and gives *four Canons* about it, repeated by *Voſſius* and *Daneſius*, viz. That they end in *is*.

(1) Whoſe Genitive is like their Nominative, as *omnis*, and *navis.* *Voſſ. de Anal.* l. c. 19. *Dan. Schol.* P. 55.

(2) Which are only Plurals, as *manes* and *tres.*

(3) Whoſe Nom. Sing. ends in *r*, and Abl. in *i*, as *acer* and *imber.*

(4) Which end in *ns* or *rs*, as *mons* and *pars.*

Let the particular words be well marked, as they are met with. Such as theſe in *eis.*

Ardenteis, aureis, terreteis,
Forenſeis, vireis, qualeis, treis, &c.

And

And these in *is*,

Acris, ædis, anguis, bidentis,
Manis, omnis, mortalis, parentis,
Celeris, dulcis, fontis, pluris,
Salubris, litis, with *compluris,*
Tris, tenacis, urbis, imbris,
Summatis, partis, & *Decembris,* &c.

Of the Nom. and Accuſ. Plur. of the Third Declenſ. in the Neut. Gend.

The *Nominative* and *Acculative Plural* of the *Third Declenſion* in the *Neuter Gender* end ſometimes in *a*, and ſometimes in *ia*.

They end in *a*, whoſe Abl. Sing. ends only in *e*, as *capita* of *capite*; *onera* of *onere*; *gauſapa* of *gauſape*; So *hoſpita, ſoſpita, paupera*, of *hoſpite, ſoſpite, paupere.*

They end in *ia*, whoſe Abl. Sing. ends only in *i*, as *animalia* of *animali*; *fortia* of *forti*; or elſe in *e* and *i*, as *felicia* of *felice vel felici*. So *locupletia, divitia*, from *locuplete vel locupleti, dicite vel diviti.*

Yet from this Rule there be ſome *Exceptions.*

(1.) *Vetus* makes only *vetera*, and *uber ubera*, though they have *i* as well as *e*, in their Abl. Sing.

(2.) *Bicorpor, tricorpor, unicolor*, & *verſicolor* have only *a* in the Nom. Plur. though they have *i* in their Ablat. Sing.

This Termination in *a* comes from a Termination in *us* in the Nom. Sing. *bicorporus, verſicolorus*, &c.

(3.) *Comparatives* have only *a* in their Nom. Plur. though they have both *e* and *i* in their Abl. Sing. as *maiora, minora.*

The Ablative of theſe in *e* being the more uſual, they follow that Termination.

Yet *plus* hath *plura* and *pluria*, and thence are *complura* and *compluria.*

Aplustre whoſe Ablat. is *Aplustri*, is alſo ſaid to have both *aplustra*, and *aplustria*, but *aplustra* comes not of *Aplustre*, but of *aplustrum* anciently uſed. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 13. *Daneſ. Schol.* p. 52.

Of the Gen. Caſe Plur. of the Third Declenſion.

The *Genitive Caſe Plural* of the *Third Declenſion* endeth generally in *um*, as *Lapidum.*

Yet there are ſundry *Words*, and *Kinds* of words, that do end in *ium*: for which there are theſe Rules.

Rule Firſt, Such as have *i*, or both *e* and *i*, in the Abl. Sing. have *ium* in their Gen. Plur. as *Turris, turri, turrium. Animal, animali, animalium. Fortis* & *forte, forti, fortium.* So *felix, felice vel felici, felicium. Imber, imbre* & *imbri, imbrium. Prudens, prudente* & *prudenti, prudentium. Concors, concorde* & *concordi, concordium.*

So *Gentiles* in *as*, as *Arpinâs, Fidenâs, Capenâs, noſtrâs, veſtrâs*, and, like them, *optimâs* & *ſummâs*, which from an old Nom. in *tis* form an Abl. in *ti*, and thence a Gen. Plur. in *tium*, as *Arpinatium, noſtratium, optimatium*, &c.

Yet

Yet from this Rule there are *Exceptions.*

1. Except. All *Comparatives have their Gen. Plur.* ending in *um*, as *major* & *majus*, *majorum*; except *plus plurium*, & *complurium complurium.*

Yet *Pliny* preferreth *complurum* before *complurium* (as *Voſſius* ſaith from *Charisius*) againſt the uſe of the Ancients.

2. Except. *Words* ending in *fex*, compounded of *facio*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um*, as *Artifex*, *artificum*; *opifex*, *opificum*; *carnifex*, *carnificum.*

Theſe, when taken Adjectively, have their Ablat. in *e* and *i*; yet their Gen. Plur. ends only in *um*, probably that their Gen. Caſes might not be confounded with *artificium*, *opificium*, &c. Subſtantives Singular of the Neuter Gender.

3. Except. Theſe *Particular words* in their Genitive Plural end in *um.*

Memor, *immemor*, *inops*, *uber*,
Compos, *impos*, *impubes*, *puber*,
Dives, *degener*, *congener*, *bicorpor*,
Vetus, *ſtrigilis*, *mugilis*, *tricorpor.*

Vigilum is of *vigil* the Subſtantive, whoſe Ablat. Sing. is *vigile.* Of *vigili*, the Abl. of *vigil* the Adjective is rather formed *vigilium.* See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 14. p. 312.

Rule Second. *Subſtantives of two or more Syllables ending with two Conſonants*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*, as *Cohors*, *cohortium*; *parens*, *parentium.* Dos eſt magna parentium Virtus. *Hor. l. 3. Od. 24.*

Likewiſe many *Adjectives uſed Subſtantively*, as *Serpens*, *ſerpentium*; *bidens*, *bidentium*: So *infans*, *infantium*; *adoleſcens*, *adoleſcentium*; *rudens*, *rudentium*; which taken Subſtantively have their Ablat. in *e.*

Yet from this Rule there are *Exceptions.*

1. Except. Theſe Particular words, *Cœlebs*, *conſors*, *hyems*, *judex*, *ſenex*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um.*

2. Except. *Words* derived of *capio*, as *Auceps*, *forceps*, *manceps*, *municeps*, *particeps*, *princeps*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um.* Yet Juſtin. *l. 1. from* princeps *formeth* principium.

In the moſt the reaſon may be to diſtinguiſh them from *Subſtantives* Sing. ending in *ium*: as *Aucupium*, *mancipium*, &c.

3. Except. *Latine* words formed of *Greek* ones ending in ων in Greek, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um* in Latine: as *Arabs*, *Arabum*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopum.* So *Calybs*, *Cyclops*, *Phalanx*; to which add theſe Monoſyllables, *gryps*, *lynx*, *ſphynx.*

Rule Third. Nouns ending in *er*, *es*, and *is* not increaſing in the Gen. Caſe Singul. have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*: as *Venter*, *ventrium*; *nubes*, *nubium*; *piſcis*, *piſcium.* Piſces attriu ventrium coeunt. *Plin. l. 9. c. 26.*

So Greek words of the Second Declenſion of the Contracts: as *Syrtis*, *Syrtium*; *diœceſis*, *diœceſium.*

Hither

Hither refer *caro, carnium*, there having been anciently *hæc carnis, hujus carnis.*

Except. Yet from this Rule are excepted *juvenis, juvenum*; *canis, canum*; and *panis, panum*, if it be read in the Plur. Numb. in that Case.

Rule fourth, Sundry *Words of more Syllables than one* increasing in the Gen. Case Singul. have *ium* in their Gen Case Plur. viz. *civitas, utilitas, hæreditas.* So *Samnis* and *Quiris.* Also *palus* and *fornax.*

Civitatium is in *Just.* l 9. *utilitatium* in *Liv.* l. 45. *hæreditatium* in the *Pandects.* Notwithstanding the Syncopated Termination in *um* is in these much the more usual. So *Samnitium* is in *Liv.* l. 7. *Quiritium* in *Hor.* lib. 1. *Od.* 1. But their Nomin. Case formerly was *Samnitis* and *Quiritis*: so that these words may be reduced to the Third Rule. *Paludium* is in *Colum.* l. 3. c. 9. *fornacium* in *Plin.* l. 35. c. 14. Though *paludum* is also read in *Mela.* l 3. c. 3. and *fornacum* in *Plin.* l. 34. c. 10.

Rule Fifth. Some words that are only Plurals have their Genitive ending in *ium*: as *manes, manium*; *penates, penatium*; *tres, trium*, and *mœnia, mœnium.* Also these two Singulars *Sal* (wit) and *vis*, have in their Gen. Plur. *salium* and *virium.*

Tres hath *trium* from the Greek τρι῀ων. *Sales* (for *jests* or *conceits*) is so rarely found (though it be found, and in *Cicero*) in that sense in the Singular Number, that it hath been taken for an only Plural. The Nom. Sing. of *vires*, is *vis*: but that being made of *virîs* by a *Syncope* and a *Crasis*, thence comes the Gen. Plur. *virium.* Of *mœnia, mœnium* see *Danes. Schol.* p. 53.

On the other side, *opes, primores, lemures, cœlites, celeres, Luceres*, and *proceres* have *um* in the Gen. Plural.

These words are taken to be Plurals only: but are all, or most, found to have Singulars. See my Explanations of *Quæ genus* on *Masculà sunt tantùm*, &c.

Celeres, Luceres, and *Proceres* come of *celer, Lucer*, and *procer*, out of use.

Rule Sixth. *Several sorts of words of one Syllable* have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*: viz.

(1) Such Latine words in *x* as have a *Consonant* before *x*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*: as *arx, calx, falx, lanx, merx.* Gen. *arcium*, &c.

(2) Some words of one Syllable that have a *Vowel* before *x*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*: as *nix, nox, faux, crux, trux.* Gen. *nivium, noctium*, &c.

The rest make *um*: as

Grex and *lex*, with *rex*, and *dux*,
Strix, vox, Phryx, with *Thrax* and *nux.*

Also

Faucium *is read in* Plin. *l.* 21. *c.* 21. crucium *in* Tertul. Nucum *is read in* Plin. *l.* 15. *c.* 22.

Also *prex* and *frux* (out of use) have *precum* and *frugum*.

(3.) Some words of one Syllable that end in a liquid Consonant, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*: as *par, pariam*; *lar, larium*; *cor, cordium*.

Par hath *parium*, as coming from *paris*: and thence *compar* hath *comparium*.

The rest end in *um*: as *ren, renum*; *splen, splenum*; *fur, furum*.

But *mel, fel*, and *Sol* have no Gen. Case Plur.

(4.) Some that end in *s pare* (with a Vowel before it) have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*: as *As, assium*; *mas, marium*; *vas, vadium*; *bes, bessium*; *lis, litium*; *glis, glirium*; *dis, ditium*; *vis, virium*; *cos, cotium*; *dos, dotium*; *os*, * *ossis, ossium*; and *mus, murium*.

* *And by Analogie* os, oris, orium, *if it were to be used.*

The rest have *um*, viz. *pes, pedum* (whence *bipes, bipedum*) *præs, prædum*; *mos, morum*; *flos, florum*; *thus, thurum*; *crus, crurum*; *fus, fuum*; *grus, gruum*; *laus, laudum*; *fraus, fraudum*; *bos, boum* (by a Syncope for *bovium*.)

Of *jus Cato* hath *jurum*, *Plautus jurium*: of which, *utrumque insolens*, saith *Vossius*. If *æs* and *rus* were to form a Gen. Plur. it should be *æruum* and *rurum*, rather than *arium* and *rurium*. *Mr.* Farnaby *saith* pus, purum.

5. All words that end in *s impure* (or having a Consonant before it) have their Gen. Plur. in *ium*: as *Ars, artium*; *pars, partium*; *mons, montium*; *fons, fontium*; *pons, pontium*; *dens, dentium*; *trabs, trabium*; *urbs, urbium*.

Except *gryps, grypum*; *seps, sepum*, which are originally Greek words. To which may be added *Sphynx, Sphyngum*.

1. Note. Many words in *ium* are found by a *Syncope* to have a Termination in *um*: as *Optimatûm* for *Optimatium* used by *Cornel. Nepos*. *Summatûm* for *summatium* by *Plaut*. *Sontûm* for *sontium* by *Stat*. *Agrestûm* for *agrestium*: and *cœlestûm* for *cœlestium* by *Virg*. *Volucrûm* for *volucrium* by *Plin*. *Cædûm* for *cædium* by *Siltus*. *Sedûm* for *sedium* by *Cic*. *Mensûm* for *mensium* by *Paul. J. C*. *Paludûm* for *paludium* by *Mela*. *Fornacûm* for *fornacium* by *Plin*. *Forûm* for *forium* by *Plaut*. *Larûm* for *larium* by *Varro*. *Ossûm* for *ossium* by *Apul*. *Murûm* for *murium* by *Cic*.

Utilitatûm, civitatûm, hæreditatûm are ordinary. So are the Syncopated Cases of Participles: such as *cadentûm, sapientûm, sapientûm, loquentûm, manentûm, potentûm, precantûm, regnantûm, rudentûm, sequentûm, silentûm, venientûm*, all in *Virgil*, and the like in others: and like these, *parentûm* and *quadrupedantûm*.

2. Note. Many words have in the Gen. Plural one Termination in *ium*, and another in *orum*: as the names of Feasts, *Floralia, Floralium* and *Floraliorum*; *Agonalia, Agonalium* and *Agonaliorum*; *Saturnalia, Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliorum*, &c.

Of these the Termination in *um* is formed from a Nom Case in *e*; v. g. *Florale*, &c. That in *orum* is formed from a Nom. Case Sing in *ium*; v. g. *Floralium*, &c.

The

The like may be said of *alvearium* and *alveariorum*; the first from *alvear* and *alveare*, the second from *alvearium*. So of *exemplarium* from *exemplar*, and *exemplariorum* from *exemplarium* (turned by *Ignatius* into ἐξεμπλάριον.) So of *Vectigalium* and *vectigaliorum*; *ancilium* and *anciliorum*; *sponsalium* and *sponsaliorum*; *viridium* and *viridiorum*; *conclavium* and *conclaviorum*, it may be said the several Terminations in the Gen. Plur. are formed from several Terminations in the Nom. Singular: it being not unusual for words to have such variety of Terminations. For example, *Milliare* and *milliarium* are both in *Cic. Torcular* and *torcularium* in *Cato*; and *Lupanar* and *lupanarium*. So *A. Gell.* hath *vulgaris* and *vulgarius*. *Turpilius* hath both *singularis* and *singularius*, as *Vossius* from *Nonius* tells us.

Epist. ad Trall.

So again Greek words in *ma* have two Genitives, one in *um*, from the Nom. Sing. in *ma*, of the Greek Termination; and one in *orum*, from a Nom. Sing. in *um*, of a Latine Termination: as *Poematum* from *hoc poema*, and *poematorum* from *hoc poematum*, &c.

Sometimes Greek words have their Greek Termination written in Latine Letters: as *Hæreseôn*, *Epigrammatôn*, *Metamorphoseôn*.

Of the Dat. Case Plur. of the Third Declension.

The Dative Case Plural of the Third Declension regularly ends in *ibus*, as *lapidibus*.

By this Termination *ibus* the Dative Case Plural of the *Third* Declension is distinguished from the Dative Plural of the *First* which ends in *abus*; and of the *Fourth* too, which though it hath *ibus* (as being derived from this Declension) yet it hath not *ibus* only, as this hath. *Bus*, which is ordinarily given for the Termination of this Case, is common to all the Three Declensions; and to those also of the *First* that end in *abus*. For *abus*, *ebus*, *ibus*, *obus*, *ubus*, all end in *bus*.

Bobus and *bubus*, which differ from this Termination, are contracted of *bovibus*. *Voss. de Arte Gram.* l. 2. c. 15. So *Subus* is said for *Suibus*, which *Cicero* hath l. 5. *de Fin.*

Quinquatriis is from *quinquatria*, *quinquatriorum*: *Quinquatribus* is from *quinquatria*, *quinquatrium*, or from *quinquatrus*, *fructibus* from *fructus*.

Neuter Greek words in *ma*, besides their Dative in *ibus*, have another in *is*: but that is formed as from a Nom. in *um*.

For example, *Poematis* is formed from *hoc poematum*, as *poematibus* from *hoc poema*. And so 'tis in the rest. Not to note that these kind of words have a formation of the *First Declension*. Whence we read of *Diademam dedit*, in *Pompon.* *Cui servili Schemâ*, in *Plaut* and *exemplar impetratæ Schemæ*, in *Suet.* of which way of forming, those Terminations in *is* may be some remains. See *Danes. Schol.* l. 1. c. 13.

Sometime

Sometimes amongſt the Ancients there is met withal a Dative of a Greek Termination in *ſin* (i. e. σι with ν added to it): as in *Dryaſin*, *Hamadryaſin*, *Etheſin*, *Schemaſin*. But theſe, as being not *Latine* words, croſs not our Rule: and as being *rare*, are only to be obſerved, not followed.

Of the Gen. Caſe Sing. of the Fourth Declenſion.

The Genitive Caſe Singular of the Fourth Declenſion regularly ends in *ûs*: as *manûs*.

Yet ſome words now of the *Fourth* Declenſion anciently were alſo of the *Second* Declenſion; and of them remains a Gen. Caſe in *i*: as *ornati* of *ornatus*, *tumulti* of *tumultus*.

Hence *Ter. Eun.* 2. 2. *Quid iſtuc inquam ornati eſt.* And *Phorm.* 1. 3. *Ubi ejus adventi venit in mentem.* And *Adelph.* 5. 4. *Hoc fructi pro labore ab his fero.* And *And.* 2. 2. *In ædibus nihil ornati, nihil tumulti.* Of the ſame ſtamp are theſe cited by *Voſſius* from *Nonius*.

Senati, ſumti, exerciti, æſti,
Aſpecti, gemiti, piſcati, quæſti,
Geli with *victi*, *ſtrepiti*, and *lucti*,
Salti, *parti*, *porti*, *ſoni*, *fluctì*.
Huc commigravit ſui quæſti causâ. Plaut. Pœn. *Prol.* 95.

Again, ſome words now of the *Fourth* Declenſion anciently were of the *Third*; and of them remains a Gen. Caſe in *is*: as *anuis* of *anus*.

Hence *Ter. He.* 2. 3. *Ejus anuis causâ opinor, quæ erat mortua.* Of the ſame ſtamp are *Senatuis* for *Senatûs*; *domuis* for *domûs*; *fluctuis* for *fluctûs*, which *A. Gell.* ſaith *M. Varro*, and *P. Nigidius*, learned Romans did uſe. So alſo *rituis* for *rîtûs*; *fructuis* for *fructûs*; *victuis* for *victûs*; and *graduis* for *gradûs*; which *Voſſius* citeth from their Authors, *De Analog.* l. 2. c. 17. See alſo *Daneſ. Schol.* l. 1. *c.* 19.

Of the Genitive Caſe in *uis* is made the Regular Genitive in *ûs* by a Craſis, whence the Termination is long.

Of the Dat. Caſe Sing. of the Fourth Declenſion.

The *Dative Caſe Singular of the Fourth* Declenſion regularly ends in *ui*, as *manui*.

Yet by an *Apocope i* is cut off from many Datives of this Declenſion, and for *ui* is read *u*: as *ornatu* for *ornatui*.

If veſtitu be not there the Abl. Caſe, as ſome think.

So *Ter. Ad.* 1. 1. *Veſtitu nimio indulges.* Virg. Æn. 1. *Parce metu Cytheræa.* Cæſ. in Dolab. act. 3. *In ædibus ſantſque poſita, & honori erant & ornatu.* Tacit. Annal. 14. *Cruciatu, aut præmio cuncta pervia eſſe.* Yea, *quibus ſubito impetu, ac latrocinio parricidarum reſiſtat*, is *Cicero's*, ſaith *Voſſius*. Of the ſame ſtamp is *victu*, *concubitu*, *adſpectu*, for *victui*, *concubitui*, *adſpectui* in *Virg. Exercitu* for *exercitui* in *Varro. Curſu* for *curſui* in *Veget. Anu* and *victu* for *anui* and *victui* in *Lucil. Uſu* for *uſui* in *Lucret. Dominatu* for *dominatui* in *Cæſ. Luxu* for *luxui* in *Salluſt.* & *Tacit. Venatu* for *venatui*, *curru* for *curui* in *Virg. Quæſtu* & *cultu* for *quæſtui* & *cultui*

cultui in *Plaut. Delectu* for *delectui* in *Liv.* See *Schrevel.* in *Ter. Ad.* 1. 1. *Farnab. Gram.* p. 14. *Alvar. Instit. Gram.* p. 217. *A. Gell.* l. 14. c. 16. *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 18.

Of the Abl. Case Sing. of the Fourth Declension.

The Ablative Case Singular of the Fourth Declension regularly ends in *u*: as *manu*.

Impete is not, as some would have it, the Ablat. Case of *impetus*, but of *impes*, whose Gen. *impetis* is in *Lucret.* l. 6. and Abl. *impete* is in *Ovid Met.* 3. See *my Explanations of Quæ genus, or Sunt Diptota*, &c.

Of the Gen. Case Plur. of the Fourth Declension.

The Genitive Case Plural of the Fourth Declension regularly ends in *uum*, as *manuum*.

Of *uum* in this Case by a *Syncope* is made *ûm*.

Hence *currûm* for *curruum* in *Virg. Æn.* 6. *nurûm* for *nuruum* in *Virg. Æn.* 12. and *passûm* for *passuum* in *Martial.* l. 2. ep. 5.

Of the Dat. Case Plur. of the Fourth Declension.

The Dative Case Plural of the Fourth Declension most usually ends in *ibus*: as *manibus*.

Yet (1) some words of this Declension end in *ubus*: as

Specus, arcus, artus
Lacus, tribus, partus.

Hence *Hor.* 5. *Epod. Per liberos te, si vocata partubus.* Ovid. 4. Fast. *Præmia de lacubus proxima musta tuis.* Virg. Ep. de Livore, *Et totum bibit artubus cruorem.*

Some add *acubus, quercubus, ficubus*, which yet *Alvarus* thinks to be no where found: no nor *acibus, quercibus, ficibus*: for the last of which *ficis* of the second Declension is in use, and *præpocet Plinio*, as Mr. *Farnaby* saith, *System. Gram.* p. 15.

(2) Some words of this Declension end both in *ibus* and *ubus*, as *quæstus, genu, portus, veru.*

Quæstibus and *quæstubus, genibus* and *genubus* are read in *Ovid.* and *Seneca, portibus* and *portubus* in *Cæs. Bell. Civ.* where yet, saith *Vossius*, for *portibus*, the Manuscripts read *portubus*. *Veribus* is read in *Virg.* 1. *Æn. Pars in frusta secant, Veribúsque trementia figunt.* *Verubus* is read in *Ovid.* 6. *Met. Pars verubus stridet.* See *Dan. Schol.* l. 1. c. 14.

Of the Gen. Case Sing. of the Fifth Declension.

The Genitive Case Singular of the Fifth Declension now regularly ends in *ei*, as *diei*.

Anciently there were other Terminations of it.

First, Sometimes the Termination of the Genitive was the same with that of the Nominative, namely *es*.

In this respect it was so with Nouns of this Declension, as with Parisyllabical Nouns in *is* of the Third Declension, from whence probably this Declension was formed.

Hence that of *Cicero pro Sextio* relating the words *Consulis* ἀπὸ χαϊζοντος, as *H. Stephanus* thinks, *Equites verò daturos illius dum pœnas.* So *Lucret* lib. 4.——*Rabies unde illæ hæc germina fingunt.*

Secon

Secondly, Sometimes *ei* was first contracted into *ei*, and then into *i*.

As *Ulyssei* of *Ulysseus* is first contracted into *Ulyssei* (trisyllab.) and then into *Ulyssi*.

Hence that of *Virg.* 1. *Æn.* as some read it, *Munera, lætitiámque dii.* And that of *Corn. Nepos, Quæ quidem res & illis contumentibus pernicii, & huic despecto saluti fuit.* And so the rest which are read in the same Termination in ancient Authors and Manuscripts, viz. *progenii, acii, luxurii, specii, fidii, famii* for *famei* of *fames*, sometimes of the Fifth Declension. See *Gell.* l. 9. c. 19.

Thirdly, Sometimes *i* was by an Apocope cut off from *ei* in the Genitive Case.

Hence that of *Sallust. Vix decimâ parte die reliquâ*; and *dubitavit acie pars*; and *Et jam die vesper erat*; and *At indè nullâ munitionis aut requie morâ processit ad oppidum.* And that of *Auson. Carm. de Rosâ. Ad primos radios interitura die.* And that of *Ovid* 3. *Met. Prima fide vocisque ratæ tentamina sumpsit*; and lib. 7. *Meditataque pene reliqui Tentamenta fide.* And *ib. ver.* 742. *Cui non ista fide satis experientia sano Magna soret satis?* And l. 6. *Utque fide pignus dextras utrasque popposcit.* And that of *Horace*, 1. *Carm.* 2. *Od. Libra die somnique pares ubi fecerit umbras.*

Of the Dat. Case sing. of the Fifth Declension.

The Dative Case Singular of the Fifth Declension regularly ends in *ei*.

Yet this Dative is sometimes found to end in *e*, the *i* being cut off by an Apocope.

Hence *Lucil.* l. 1. *Ætati faciequt tuæ. Hor.* l. 1. *Sat.* 3. *Prodiderit commissa fide.* And this Dative in *e* was used by those, *qui purissimè locuti sunt*, saith *Gell. Noct. Att.* l. 9. c. 14. See *Danes. Schol.* p. 62. *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 19.

CHAP. II.

Of the Comparing of Adjectives.

After the Learner is perfected in the forming of Nouns Substantives, then let him be made skilful in the forming of *Regular Comparisons* of Adjectives; so as that hearing one Positive Degree of any compared Adjective, he can instantly form thereof a Comparative and a Superlative in any Case, Gender, or Number: as *Doctus, doctior, doctissimus. Docta, doctior, doctissima. Doctum, doctius, doctissimum*, &c.

That he may do this with greatest ease and readiness, (having first taught him to decline the Positive alone, so as that he

can either decline it in both Numbers through all Terminations viz. *Doctus, docta, doctum*; *Docti, doctæ, docti*, &c. or (which is the harder work) in one singular Termination, viz. *Doctus, docti doctо*, &c. *docta, doctæ, doctæ*, &c. *Doctum, docti, doctо*, &c.) practise him first to decline only the Comparative together with the Positive according to the several Terminations of it; thus, Nom. *Doctus, doctior*; Gen. *Docti, doctioris*; Dat. *Doctо, doctiori*, &c. Nom. *Docta, doctior*; Gen. *Doctæ, doctioris*; Dat. *Doctæ, doctiori*, &c. Nom. *Doctum, doctius*; Gen. *Docti, doctioris*; Dat. *docti doctiori*, &c. then all the three degrees together, first in the Masculine, then in the Feminine, and so in the Neuter Gender throughout all Cases of both Numbers; thus, *Doctus, doctior, doctissimus. Docti, doctioris, doctissimi*, &c. *Docta, doctior, doctissima. Doctæ, doctioris, doctissimæ*, &c. *Doctum, doctius, doctissimum. Docti, doctioris, doctissimi*, &c. and last of all, all the three Degrees together in all Cases of both Numbers, and through all the Genders of every Case together; thus, Nom. *Doctus, doctior, doctissimus*; *Docta, doctior, doctissima*; *Doctum, doctius, doctissimum. Docti, doctioris, doctissimi*; *doctæ, doctioris, doctissimæ*; *docta doctioris, doctissimi*, &c. And so let him go on to do Adjectives of other Terminations, as *tener, felix, prudens, vetus*, &c.

When the Scholar hath attained to a competent readiness in the forming of *Regular* and *Perfect Comparisons*, let him then proceed to, and be made acquainted with those Comparisons that are *Irregular*, and *Defective* or *Redundant*. Touching which, because it may be useful both to Teachers and Learners, I will here set down such a Collection of Rules and Observations, as I gathered for my private use, beginning first with the Irregular Comparisons.

Of Irregular Comparisons.

Celerissimus *found in* Manlius *and* Ennius *is from* celeris.

Irregular Comparison is, when Degrees are formed not according to Rule.

1. Positives in *er*, form a superlative Degree, by assuming unto them *rimus*, as *Pulcher, pulcherrimus.*

2. These three *facilis, similis*, and *humilis* form their Superlative by changing *is* into *limus*; as *facilis, facillimus*; *similis, simillimus*; *humilis, humillimus.* So the Compounds of *facilis* and *similis*; *difficilis, difficillimus*; *dissimilis, dissimillimus.* *imbecillis* is formed *imbecillimus*; though there be also *imbecillimus* of *imbecillus.*

3. Adjectives derived of *dico, loquor, volo, facio*, form their Comparative and Superlative Degrees as of Positives in *ens*, as *Maledicus, maledicentior, maledicentissimus. Magniloquus, magniloquentior, magniloquentissimus. Benevolus, benevolentior, benevolentissimus. Magnificus, magnificentior, magnificentissimus. Mirificus* hath *mirificissimus.*

4. Adj

4. Adjectives ending in *us* pure, form a Periphrastical Comparative and Superlative, by adding *magis* or *maxime*, and *minus* or *minime*, to their Positive degree, as *Pius*; *magis pius*; *maxime pius*. *Assiduus*; *magis assiduus*; *maxime assiduus*. *Idoneus*; *minus idoneus*; *minime idoneus*. *Reus*; *minus reus*; *minime reus*.

Note other Adjectives are in Authors compared according to this Periphrastical way: but these Adjectives are not ordinarily compared any other way.

Yet, though it be not ordinary, there may be found Comparatives and Superlatives regularly formed of this sort of Adjectives: as *Idoneior* of *idoneus*. *Arduior* of *arduus*. *Innoxior* of *innoxius*. *Industrior* of *industrius*. So *Egregiissimus* of *egregius*. *Perpetuissimus* of *perpetuus*. *Exiguissimus* of *exiguus*. *Vacuissimus* of *vacuus*. Also *Strenuior* and *strenuissimus* of *strenuus*. *Assiduior* and *assiduissimus* of *assiduus*. Thence *assiduissime* in Cic. in Erut. *Assiduissime autem mecum fuit Dionysius*. *Piissimus* of *pius*, which are not but with great wariness to be used. See *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 27.

5. These singular words are also irregularly compared.

Bonus,	*melior*,	*optimus*,
Malus,	*pejor*,	*pessimus*,
Magnus,	*major*,	*maximus*,
Parvus,	*minor*,	*minimus*,
Multus, *Multa*, *Multum*,	*plus*,	*plurimus*, *plurima*, *plurimum*,
Vetus,	*veterior*,	*veterrimus* of *veter*.
citer, *	*citerior*,	*citimus*, †
inferus,	*inferior*,	*infimus*, & *imus*,
Exterus, & *Exter*,	*exterior*,	*extremus*, & *extimus*,
superus,	*superior*,	*supremus* & *summus*.
posterus,	*posterior*,	*postremus* & *postumus*,
nequam,	*nequior*,	*nequissimus*.

* Vossius saith, Cato used it: but that now it is almost grown obsolete.

† Cituma is read in Cic. 1. de Rep. Deduc orationem tuam de cœlo ad hæc cituma. *Antistiechon*, for citima, as we find maxume for maxime.

And thus far of *Comparisons Irregular*.

N. Before the learning of either in Latine, it might be useful to be taught the doing of both in English: as, Reg. *Brave*, *braver*, *bravest*. *Sweet*, *sweeter*, *sweetest*. Irreg. *Good*, *better*, *best*. *Bad*, *worse*, *worst*, &c.

Now follows *Comparison Defective*.

Of Defective Comparisons.

Defective Comparison, is, when any one of the three Degrees is wanting.

These are said to want the *Positive Degree.*

Prior, primus, from the obsolete *pris.*
Ocior, ocissimus, from ὠκίων ὤκις.
Potior, potissimus,
Deterior, deterrimus, } from *potis, deter, ulter* grown out of use.
Ulterior, ultimus,
Penitior, penitissimus.
Interior, intimus, from *inter.*
Propior, proximus, from *propis* or *propus.*
Diutior, diutissimus. Of which word yet *Vossius* saith he remembers not that he ever read it.

These are said to want the *Comparative Degree.*

Apricus, abricissimus.
Bellus, bellissimus.
Consultus, consultissimus.
Meritus, meritissimus,
Novus, novissimus.
Nuperus, nuperrimus.
Diversus, diversissimus.
Falsus, falsissimus.
Fidus, fidissimus.
Inclytus, inclytissimus.
Invitus, invitissimus.
Persuasus, persuasissimus.
Sacer, sacerrimus.

¶ Yet there may be found in *Gellius* both *novius* and *diversius.* Hence *Plin.* l. 12. c. 9. *Pretia nulli diversiora. Justin* l. 16. hath *Ut eos sibi fidiores redderet.* Our *Danæus* in his *Prælect. ad Lysiam* hath *bellius* an Adverb. And *Petron. Nihil est hominum ineptè persuasione falsius. Cicero* hath *invitius* an Adverb. *Quem ego paullo scibam invitius ad hoc sermonis genus accedere. De Orat.* l. 3. 123. So *invisus,* formerly thought to want a Comparative, hath *invisior,* in *Cic. Off.* l. 2. *S.* 9. *Quo enim quis versutior & callidior est, hoc invisior, & suspectior*— So *Sollicitus* hath *sollicitior. Cic. Fam.* 10. 18. *Sollicitiorem certe hominem non suis contractis, neminem puto fuisse.*

Which yet I do not recommend to be used.

Hither may be referred these Nouns of which there are Superlatives read, *Exclusus, exclusissimus, occlusus, occlusissimus.* (Plaut. Cist. 1. 1.) *par, parissimus,* and also these *Pronouns, tuus, tuissimus, ipse, ipsissimus,* used by *Plaut* in *Trin.* in imitation of *Aristophanes* saying αὐτότατος from αὐτός.

These are said to want the *Superlative Degree.*

Adolescens, adolescentior.
Communis, communior.
Dives, divitior.
Declivis, declivior.
Dexter, dexterior. *
Grandis, grandior.
Ingens, ingentior.
Salutaris, salutarior.
Sinister, sinisterior.
Supinus, supinior.
Infinitus, infinitior.
Juvenis, junior.
Longinquus, longinquior.
Opimus, opimior. †
Proclivis, proclivior.
Propinquus, propinquior.
Remissus, remissior.
Satur, saturior.
Senex, senior.
Taciturnus, taciturnior.

* Dextimus *and* Sinistimus *signifie no more, than* dexter *and* sinister. *See* Alvar.

† Gel. *l.* 5. *c.* 14.

¶ Y

¶ Yet *Plaut. Curc.* 1. 1. hath *taciturnissimus.* And *Cicero*, *divitissimus.* l. 1. *de Div.* c. 36. 448. b. Of *divus* is read *dirius. Cic. de Div.* l. 2. c. 15. *Quibus nihil videtur esse divius.*

These want both the *Positive* and the *Superlative Degrees.*

Viz. *Satior, anterior, licentior, sequior, alsior.* Whither may be referred *Punior, Neronior, Cinædior*, of which as there is no Superlative read, so no Positive, but a Noun Substantive, viz. *Pœnis, Nero, Cinædus.*

Nullus me est hodie Pœnus punior. Plaut. Pœn.

Nihil quietius, nihil alsius. Cic. Att. 4. 8. 5. 2. 31.

Some want both *Positive* and *Comparative*; as *Victorissimus, Patruissimus*, and *Plautinissimus*, &c. which are not imitable.

O patrue mi patruissime Plaut. Pœn. 5. 4. 24.

And thus far of *Comparison Defective*, now follows *Comparison Redundant.*

Of Redundant Comparisons.

Redundant Comparison is, when any one degree hath various formations, which happens mostly in the Superlative degree.

Sometimes there are *two Superlatives* of one Positive, as *Extremus* and *extimus* of *exterus. Infimus* and *imus* of *Inferus. Maturissimus* and *maturrimus* of *maturus.* See *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 25. *Piissimus* and *Pientissimus* of *pius. Postremus* and *postumus* of *posterus. Supremus* and *summus* of *superus.*

Sometimes of a Superlative Degree there is formed a new *Comparative* or *Superlative*: as *Proximior* of *proximus. Extremius* and *extremissimus* * of *extremus. Minimissimus* † of *minimus. Postremius* and *postremissimus* of *postremus. Pessimissimus* of *pessimus.*

In these, whereof there are Examples in *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 26. some later *Latines* have imitated some *Greeks.* For in *Ephes.* 3. 8. we read ἐλαχιστότερῳ from ἐλάχιστος· and so in *Xenoph.* ἐσχατώταλῳ from ἔσχαλῳ, who yet are not without great warinesse to be followed therein.

* Extremissimus *is used by* Lipsius *l.* 2. *de Cruce, c.* 12.

† Minimissimus *by* Jan. Dousa Plautin. Explic. *l.* 3. *c.* 23.

After this Account of *Defective* and *Redundant*, as well as *Irregular Comparisons*, it may perhaps not be ungrateful to the learning Reader to have some account of *Adjectives* that are *not compared at all*, unless Periphrastically by *magis* and *maxime*, or *minus* and *minime.*

Nullum animal in terris homine postremius. *Appul. de Deo Socrat.*

Adjectives not compared are

Cicur, claudus, canus, calvus,
Degener, dispar, almus, salvus.
Egenus, memor, magnanimus, mirus,
Jejunus, crispus, unicus, delirus.
Canorus, balbus, ferus, and *vetulus,*
Sylvestris, mediocris, and *edentulus.*

Voss. de Analog. l. 2. c. 22. saith, *Opimus* hath no Comparative or Superlative; but *Gell.* l. 5. c. 14. hath *membra opimiora.*

Besides these particular words, there be many sorts of Adjectives, which Grammarians say are not compared.

1. Gentiles, as *Romanus, Græcus, Athenienſis.*
2. Poſſeſſives, as, *Fraternus, herilis, muliebris, caſtrenſis.*
3. Numerals, as *ſeptem, ſeptimus, ternarius, tertianus.*
4. Diminutives, as *tenellus, tantillus, tantulus.*
5. Materials, as *Aureus, æreus, lapideus, ligneus.*
6. Temporals, as *Matutinus, heſternus, biennis.*
7. Compounds of *fer* and *gero*, as *Salutifer, corniger.*
8. Words ending in the Terminations following.
   1. *bundus*, as *moribundus, cunctabundus.*
   2. *imus*, as *bimus, trimus, maritimus.*
   3. *ivus*, as *deliberativus.*
   4. *plex*, as *duplex, triplex.*
   5. *fler*, as *campeſter, ſylveſter.*

¶ Yet *Ramus* owns *feſtivior*, and *feſtiviſſimus* of *feſtivus*, and *ſimplicius* of *ſimplex*, which he ſaith *Quintilian* thought well of; And *Voſſius* alſo excepts *multiplex*, *l.* 2. *de Anal. c.* 27. And others may find other exceptions, which whether in this, or in any thing elſe, ſo they be upon good Authority, I ſhall not gainſay.

CHAP. III.

Of the Forming of Verbs.

THE Scholar being perfected in the forming of Nouns and comparing of Adjectives, the next thing that I would have him well grounded in, is the *Forming of Verbs*; in the performing of which work ſeveral Teachers have ſeveral ways. That which I practiſed with no ill ſucceſs, is as followeth.

First, Make the Scholar underſtand what *Tenſes* in all Moods are formed of the *Preſent Tenſe*, and what of the *Preterperfect-Tenſe*: namely that of the *Preſent Tenſe* of the Indicative Mood are formed the Preterimperfect and Future Tenſe of the ſame Mood; the Preſent and Preterimperfect Tenſes of all other Moods; the Gerunds and Participles of the Preſent Tenſe and of the Future in *dus*. And of the *Preterperfect Tenſe* of the Indicative Mood are formed the Preterpluperfect Tenſe of the ſame Mood; The Preterperfect, Preterpluperfect, and Future Tenſes of all other Moods; The Supines and Participles of the Preter Tenſe, and Future in *rus*. As the Preſent Tenſe Active. *Amo, amabam, amabo; ama, amato; amem, amarem, amare, amandi, amando, amandum, amans.* Preterperfect. *Amavi, amaveram, amaverim, amaviſſem,*

amaviſſem, amavero, amaviſſe, amaturum eſſe, amatum, amatu, amaturus. So Pref. Paſſive. *Amor, amabar, amabor; amave, amator; amer, amarer, amari, amandus.* Preterperf. *Amatus ſum vel fui, amatus eram vel fueram, amatus ſum vel fuerim, amatus eſſem vel fuiſſem, amatus ero vel fuero, amatum eſſe vel fuiſſe, amatum iri, vel amandum eſſe, amatus.*

And here it were not amiſs to acquaint the Learner what part of the Verb is fixed in the formation of it: as *am* in *amo*, *doc.* in *doceo*, &c. and what part of it is moveable, as *o* in *amo*; *eo* in *doceo*, &c. and how far thoſe motions are regular, and how far they are irregular; ſometimes the *o* being only moved, and ſometimes both the *o* and the Vowel foregoing it. For helps to which there are Tables of Formation publiſhed by ſeveral Grammarians, ſo that it may be ſufficient for me to refer to them.

When the Learner knows in what order the Verb is to be formed, and what Tenſes each of other, then let him begin the Forming of it with the Latine before the Engliſh; and together with the Verb, naming alſo the Nominative Caſe of the Perſonal Pronoun, wherewith it agrees, thus: *Ego amo*, I love; *tu amas* thou loveſt; *ille amat*, he loveth; *nos amamus*, we love; *vos amatis*, ye love; *illi amant*, they love: and ſo throughout all Moods and Tenſes of the Active Voice.

To prepare him for this, and for other purpoſes, it will be highly beneficial to teach him to form Engliſh Verbs alone throughout all Moods and Tenſes, Numbers and Perſons thus: Ind. Pref. Sing. Numb. and firſt Perſ. *I love*, or *do love*, Pr. Imp. *I loved*, or *did love*. Fut. *I ſhall*, or *will love*.

Then let him go over the Active Voice again in the ſame order, with the Latine ſtill before the Engliſh, but naming only one Perſon of a Tenſe at a time, and then proceeding to the next, thus: *Ego amo*, I love; *ego amabam*, I loved, or did love, *&c.*

When he hath in this order gone over all the perſons of all the Examples of the four Conjugations, giving the Engliſh for the Latine, then let him in the ſame order go over them all again, only giving now the Latine for the Engliſh, or ſetting the Engliſh before the Latine: thus, I love, *ego amo*; thou loveſt, *tu amas*, &c. and, I love, *ego amo*; I loved or did love, *ego amabam*: and ſo through all Moods and Tenſes, Numbers and Perſons. And let not this exerciſe be left off, till he be exact in it.

When the Active Voice is gained, then proceed to the Paſſive, and let that be got in the ſame manner and order, firſt Latine before Engliſh, then Engliſh before Latine; firſt all the Perſons of each Tenſe; then one Perſon only of a Tenſe at once; firſt the Preſent Tenſe, and all that come of it, then the Preterpertect Tenſe, and all that come of it likewiſe.

And when the Passive Voice is also thus gained, then go again to work to the getting of both Active and Passive together in [illegible] and order, Latine before English, and English [illegible] g first with the Present Tense, and those [illegible] it, and going on to the Preterperfect Tense, and those that come of that.

When the Scholar is perfect in doing thus all the four Examples of this Grammar, then put him to other Examples, which he will within a while readily do, and *extempore*, being made thus perfect in those.

It will be very useful after this practice, to put other Substantives, besides the Pronouns, before the Verbs, and form them together with the Verbs: thus, *Ego pater amo*, &c. *Ego mater amor*, &c. *Tu magister doces*, &c. *Tu puella doceris*, &c. *Ille vir legit*, &c. *Illa dictio legitur*, &c. *Nos pueri audimus*; *Vos virgines ploratis*; *Illa regna perduntur*, or the like.

If the Teacher please, he may yet go on to put his Scholar to the adding of a casual word after his Verb, chusing sometimes a Verb that governeth an Accusative, sometimes one that governeth a Dative, and sometimes one that governeth a Nominative after it: as, *Ego amo te*; *Tu places mihi*; *Horatius salutatur Poeta*; *Virgilius legitur à me*.

How great will be the benefit of this exercise, is so visible, that I need not expatiate in the commendation of it. Briefly there in there is laid the main ground-work of the Latine Tongue. For in this exercise all the Three Concords are practically learned. That of the Nominative Case and the Verb, in the declining of the Verb with his Personal Pronoun. That of the Substantive with the Substantive, in declining together with the Pronoun Substantive another Noun Substantive; *Ego pater amo*. And that of the Substantive and Adjective, in the declining of the Preterperfect Tenses of the Verbs Passives with Nominative Cases of divers Genders; *Ego pater amatus sum*; *Tu mater amata es vel fuisti*; *Illud regnum eversum est vel fuit*, &c. And I need not say how great an insight is given into the Government of Verbs, by adding a casual word to the Verb, accordingly as I have shewn.

This exercise need not be done continuedly, and altogether, but one part of it at once, and that every morning after the laying of the *morning part*. And in about a quarter of a years time it will, if well followed, be well learned.

After the Scholar is grown exact in the forming of Verbs Perfect and Regular, then let him be throughly instructed in the Verbs Defective and Irregular. The Irregular Verbs are competently done already in the Accidence. Of that which Grammarians deliver touching *Verbs Defective*, I shall here for the Ease of the Learner, subjoyn this Collection with Notes upon it.

Of

Of Verbs Defective.

Indicat. Pres. Sing. *Aio, ais, ait.* Plur. *aiunt.* Preterimperf. *aiebam, aiebas, aiebat; aiebamus, aiebatis, aiebant.* Imperat. *ai.* Potent. Pres. Sing. *aias, aiat.* Plur. *aiamus, aiant.* Particip. *aiens.* *Aio.*

¶ For *aiebant* the Ancients said *aibant. Probus* owns in the Preterperf. *ai, ailli, ait.* And 'tis certain, that in *Tertullian* is read *aierunt. Vossius* thinks the Ancients used yet more, such as *aitis, aite,* and some others. See *Voss. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 132. and *Analog* l. 3. p. 140.

Potent. Pres. & Preterperf. Sing. *Ausim, ausis, ausit.* Plur. *ausint.* *Ausim.*

¶ *Ausim* is used for *audeam* and *ausas sim.* It is made by a Syncope of *auserim* formed from *ausi,* which anciently was the Preterperf. of *audeo,* as well as *ausus sum,* which only is in use.

Indicat. Fut. *Salvebis.* Imperat. Sing. *Salve, salveto.* Plur. *Salvete, salvetote.* Infin. *Salvere.* *Salve.*

¶ *Plautus* useth *Salveo,* but in the Person of a Rustick; and in that is not to be followed, say Grammarians.

Imperat. Sing. *Ave, aveto.* Plur. *avete, avetote.* Infinit. *avere.* *Ave.*

¶ *Ave* considered as a word of Salutation, is a Defective, according to what is here delivered of it: but *aveo* to covet or desire, hath more Tenses.

Imperat. Sing. *Cedo.* Plur. *cedite.* *Cedo.*

¶ *Cedo* is used for *dic* or *porrige. Nomen mulieris cedo quod sit.* Ter. Heaut. 4. 2. *Puerum mihi cedo.* Ter. Hec. 4. 4. For *cedite* anciently was said *cette. Cette manus vestras. Enn.* in *Medea.*

Potent. Preterperf. *Faxim, faxis, faxit.* Plur. *Faxint.* Fut. *Faxo, faxis, faxit.* Plur. *faxint.* *Faxim.*

¶ *Faxim* is made of *facerim,* for *fecerim,* saith *Vossius.* and so *faxo* of *facero,* for *fecero:* for the Ancients did often retain the Vowel of the Present Tense in the Preterperfect Tense. Hence *canere* in *Salust.* for *cecinere.* Of the same nature and formation is *axim, adaxim,* and *axo.* There is read also *faximus* and *faxitis* in the Plural Number: and *faxem* for *feciſſem,* saith *Voss.* (*de Analog.* l. 2. c. 41.) and *faxere* for *factūrum eſſe,* saith Mr. *Skirly. Via ad Lat. Ling.* p. 99.

Potent. Preterimperfect Sing. *Forem, fores, foret.* Plur. *forent.* Infinit. *fore.* *Forem.*

¶ *Forem* is made of *fuerem,* and *fore* of *fuere* of the old Verb *fuo.* There is also read in *Virgil. assoret;* in *Terence, consore. Vossius* in *Etymolog. Lat.* p. 133. names *deforem.*

Indicat. Pres. *Quæſo.* Plur. *Quæſumus.* *Quæso.*

¶ In *Lucret.* there is read *quæſit;* in *Plaut. qui ſores;* in *Ac-*

leius, quæsens; in *Ennius, quæsendum*. See *Voss. de Analog.* l. c. 41.

Insit. Indicat. Pres. *Insit.*

¶ *Insit* comes of *insio* used by *Varro*, as *Priscian* testifies *l.* It signifies the same that *Incipit. Insit ibi postulare. Plaut. Aul.* 2. 4. Hither may be referred *desit* for *deest, desiunt*; *desiet, desiat, desieri.* Also *consit* and *consieri. Aliis quia desit quod amant ægrè est.* Ter. *Quæ crescente lunâ gliscunt, deficiente contrà lunâ desiunt.* Gell. *Verùm quid ego dicam? hoc consit, quod volo.* Ter. *Nunc quâ ratione quod instat Consieri possit, paucis, adverte, docebo.* Virg.

Inquam. Indicat. Pres. *Inquam, inquis, inquit.* Plur. *Inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt.* Preterimperf. *inquiebat, inquiebant.* Preterperf. *inquisti.* Futur. *inquies, inquiet.* Imperat. *inque, inquito.*

¶ Grammarians name more; but till what they name be confirmed by good Authority, it may do well to forbear them. They here named, may be confirmed by authority. *Inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt, inquiebat, inquiebant, inquisti, inquies* and *inquito* are read in *Cicero*, *inquimus* in *Horace*; *inque* in *Terence*; *inquito* in *Plautus.* See *Voss. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 133. and *de Analog.* l. c. 40. *Inquiba* is in *Cicero's Topicks*, unless it be a misprint.

Vale. Indicat. Fut. *Valebis.* Imperat. *vale, valeto*; *valete, valetote.* Infinit. *valere.*

¶ *Valeo*, to be strong or able, is a perfect Verb; but *valebo* being a form of *valediction*, or bidding adieu or farewel, is a Verb defective.

Apage. Imperat. *Apage.* Plur. *apagite.*

¶ *Vossius* deriveth *apage* and *apagite* from the Greek ἄπαγε and ἀπάγετε of ἀπάγω to drive away. *Apage* is read in *Plaut.* *apagite* in *Cic.*

Ovat. Indicat. Pres. *Ovat.* Particip. *Ovans.*

¶ Mr. *Shirly* adds *Ovarent* and *ovandi*; his authority he names not. From a Supine of this Verb *Vossius* derives the Verbals *Ovatus* and *Ovatio.*

Explicit. Indicat. Pres. *Explicit.* Plur. *expliciunt. Shirly Gram. Lat.* p. 39.

¶ *Explicit* signifies the same with *desinit.*

Scio, *Scio* in the Imperative Mood hath not *sci.*

Soleo. *Soleo* in the Future Tense hath not *solebo.*

Furo. *Furo* hath not in the Imperative Mood *fure.*

Neither *dor* nor *for* are read in the Indicative Mood; nor *dor* and *fer* in the Subjunctive Mood; yet *daris* and *faris*, &c. are used. *Diomedes* owns *effor. Fans* is in *Plaut. Pers.* 2. 1. *Tu meum ingenium fans non didicisti, atque infans*

Daris. } *Faris.* }

These three *odi, cœpi, memini* want the Tenses formed of the Present Tense: but have those that come of the Preterperfect tense

tense, as *odi, odisti, odit*, &c. *oderam, oderim, odissem, odero, odisse.* *Odi.*
Part. *osurus.* So *cœpi, cœperim, cœpissem, cœpero, cœpisse.* Sup. *cœ-* *Cœpi.*
ptum, cœptu. particip. *cœpturus.* So *memini, meminveram, memi-* *Memini.*
nerim, meminissem, meminero, meminisse.

¶ These three Verbs in the Preterperfect tense have the signification of the Present Tense; and in the Future Tense of the Potential Mood have the signification of the Future tense of the Indicative Mood. *Odi* hath also *osus sum*, and *cœpi, cœptus sum* in the Preterperfect Tense. And *memini* hath *memento* and *mementote* in the Imperative Mood. Anciently there was *odio*, whence were formed *Odivi, odivit, odite, odiet, odient, odibunt, odientes, oditur, odiaris.* So also *cœpio*, whence *cœpiam, cœpiat, cœperet*, which are sometimes read, but are now disused. It is ordinary to add to these *Novi*, because this like the rest hath in the Preterperfect tense the signification of the Present tense. But the Verb is a perfect Verb, formed of *nosco.* See *Voss. de Analog.* l. 3. c. 39. *Novi.*

And thus far of Forming of Verbs.

CHAP. IV.

Of Translating English into Latine.

BY that time the Scholar is made perfect in Forming Nouns and Verbs, it will be time to put him not only to learn an Author, but also to make *Latine*; supposing he hath in the mean time attained to some competency of knowledge of the Rules for the Genders of Nouns and Preterperfect Tenses, and Supines of Verbs, and for the *Agreement* and *Government* of Words, in English at least, and however so far, that he knows where to find, by turning thereto, such Rules as will be needful for him to consult withal for the true making of his Latine. And supposing also that he knows the several *Characters*, Marks, or Notes of *Points, Pauses*, or *Stops* used in speaking or writing, and something also of the *meaning*, use, and force of them. And supposing also that he hath learned some *Nomenclature* of *Words*: or is made able by his Dictionary to find out *Latine* for his *English*.

And because a taste at least of this knowledge of *Points* and *Pointing* is highly necessary towards the Scholars both right reading and understanding, and also to his right construing and translating, therefore I will here add somewhat of it.

Of Points.

The Points are five: a *Period*, a *Colon*, a *Comma*, a Note of *Interrogation*, and a Note of *Admiration*.

A *Period* is a single prick set at the foot of a word, thus (.)

A *Colon* is two pricks set one over the other after a word thus (:)

A *Comma* is a small semicircle set after a word at the foot of it, thus (,)

A Note of *Interrogation* is a prick set after a word with a semicircle above it, thus (?)

A Note of *Admiration* is a prick set after a word with a short straight line over it, thus (!)

To these by some are added a *Semi-Period*, a *Semi-Colon*, and a *Semi-Comma*.

A *Semi-Period* is marked thus (.) a *Semi-Colon* thus (;) and a *Semi-Comma* thus (,)

And with these are usually taught a *Parenthesis* marked with two *Semicircles*, thus ( ); and a *Parathesis* marked with two *Semiquadrats*, thus [ ].

Of Pointing.

The *Rules of Pointing* are either *General* or *Particular*.

The *General Rule*, which concerns all the Points, is this, *To so many finite Verbs as are either expressed or implied in any sentence, so many Points do belong to that sentence, if the words of it be placed in the natural order.*

The *Particular Rules*, which concern the several Points, are these.

1. Of a Period.

A *Period* is set, after a sentence containing a full and absolute sense, is compleatly ended; whether it be a simple or compounded sentence; consisting of one, or more Propositions:

Sera nunquam est ad bonos mores via. Sen.

Nihil enim honestum esse potest, quod justitiâ vacat. Cic.

Post amicitiam credendum est, ante amicitiam judicandum. Sen.

Non qui parum habet, sed qui plus cupit, pauper est. Sen.

Sæpe utile est non scire, quid fururum sit: miserum est enim, nihil proficientem angi. Cic.

N. Here it may be very useful to instruct the Learner, as far as he is capable of it, in the nature of *Enunciations* and *Propositions*, both *simple* and single, and also *complex*, and compounded, that he may the better know when his sense is compleatly ended, and how the *Pointing* of his *Period*, in all the parts of it, is to be ordered.

2. Of a Colon.

A *Colon* is set between the dividing members of a Period, or Sentence compounded of sundry Propositions.

Such as are,

(1) An *Enunciation* and its *Reason*: as,

Vigilandum est semper: multæ insidiæ sunt bonis. Cic.

Æ

Ætate fruere: mobili cursu fugit. Sen.

(2) A *Proposition* and its *Reddition* in a Similitude: as,

Ut major est vis animi, quàm corporis: sic sunt graviora ea, quæ concipiuntur animo, quàm illa, quæ corpore. Cic.

(3) A *Concessive* and its *Adversative* Conjunction: as,

Quanquam ipsa consolatio literarum tuarum mihi gratissima est: tamen illium fructum ex literis tuis cepi, &c. Cic. Fam. l. 5.

Itaque etsi domum bene potus, seróque redieram: tamen id caput, ubi hæc controversia est, notavi, &c. Cic. Fam. 7. 22.

Est invidiosa lex, sicut dixi: Veruntamen habet excusationem: non enim videtur hominis lex esse, sed temporis. Cic. 2. de Leg. Agr.

N. If the sense of the first member be very incompleat; or the words of either member transposed with the words of the other; and the whole Period be very short, then set a *Comma* between them.

(4) A *Totum* and its *Parts* in a Distinction: as,

Cujus partes duæ sunt: Justitia, in quâ virtutis splendor est maximus, & huic conjuncta Beneficentia, &c. Cic. 1. Off. c. 8.

Animum in duas partes dividunt: alteram rationis participem faciunt, alteram expertem. Cic. 4. Tusc.

(5) Distinguishing *Branches* in a *Partition*: as,

Primùm mihi videtur de genere belli: deinde de magnitudine: tum de imperatore deligendo esse dicendum. Cic. pro. Leg. Manil.

Primùm docent deos esse: deinde quales sint: tunc mundum ab iis administrari: postremò, consulere eos rebus humanis. Cic. de Nat. Deor.

(6) *Clause* and *clause* In a Transition: as,

Causa quæ sit, vidistis: nunc quid agendum sit, considerate. Cic. pro Leg. Manil.

3. *Of a Comma.*

(1) A *Comma* is set betwixt the parts of a compounded Proposition, whether it be *Conditional*, *Causal*, or *Relative*: and whether it be *Copulative*, *Discretive*, or *Disjunctive*.

1. Conditional: as,

Si dives est, bonus est.

Non si bonus est, dives est.

2. Causal: as,

Quia sursum tendit, leve est.

Remissa sunt ei peccata, quia dilexit multum.

3. Relative: as,

Qui non est hodie, cras minùs aptus erit.

Quantum quisque suâ nummorum servat in arcâ,

Tantum habet & fidei. Juv.

Quantò perditior quisque est, tanto acrius urget. Hor.

Quot vulnera, tot ora.

Qualis Princeps, talis populus.

Verbi

Unde oriuntur omnia, eò redeunt.
Non ubi quisque erit, ejus loci jus tenebit. Cic.
Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos. Ovid.
Quoties dicimus, toties de nobis judicatur. Cic.
Antequam incipias, consulto: postquam consulueris, maturè fac opus est. Sall.

4. Copulative: as,

Et homo, & brutum sentit.
Neque metuam quicquam, & cavebo omnia.
Neque bonis, neque malis invidendum est.
Non & amicus, & adulator est.
Hic & pauper, & pius, & doctus est.

5. Discretive: as,

Non qui patitur, sed qui facit injuriam, miser est.
Felicitas non in habitu, sed in actu virtutis consistit.
Quanquam robustus est, tamen ignavus est.
Quanquam planta non sentit, tamen vivit.
Non quanquam avarus est, tamen vir bonus est.

6. Disjunctive: as,

Aut dies est, aut nox.
Non aut homo est, aut animal non est.
Aut album, aut nigrum, aut medii coloris est, aut omnino colo ratum non est.
Non aut hoc, aut illud, aut istud est.

(2) A *Comma* is set betwixt the parts of a simple Propositio where the order of the parts is inverted: or the words ungra matically placed: as,

Animal est, omnis homo.
Non est delineata res, vivere. Sen. ep. 107.

(3) A *Comma* is set before a Substantive with his depende added to another Substantive by Apposition: as,

Nunc autem studetis me interficere, hominem qui veritatem vo locutus sum.
Deliciæ verò tuæ, noster Æsopus, ejusmodi fuit, ut——Cic.
Provocare ausus Albanos, gravem & diu principem populum. Flo

(4) A *Comma* is set before an Exegetical Expression added t something going before for explication, restriction, or amplifi cation; especially if brought in by a Participle, or other Ad jective: as,

Rheginos credo, quod Scenicis artibus largiri solebant, id hu summâ ingenii prædito gloriâ, noluisse? Cic.
Sit igitur, Judices, sanctum apud vos, humanissimos homines, in Postæ nomen, quod nulla unquam barbaria violavit. Cic.
Themistoclem illum, summum Athenis virum, dixisse aiunt—Cic.

(5) A *Comma* is set before and after an *Icon* or Assimilation, inserted within a sentence for illustration; as,

Eloquentiæ magister, nisi, tanquam piscator, eam imposuerit hamis iscam, quam scierit appetituros esse piscículos, sine spe prædæ moratur in scopulo, Petron.

(6) A *Comma* is set before and after a word or clause, inserted within another sentence for elegancy of composition: as,

Pacem, etiam qui vincere possunt, volunt. Liv.

Difficile est dictu, Quirites, quanto in odio simus apud exteras nationes, propter eorum, quos ad eas hoc anno cum imperio misimus, injurias, ac libidines, Cic.

(7.) A *Comma* is set after a *Vocative Case* in the beginning of a clause, and both before and after it in the middle of a clause: as,

Sexte noster, bonâ veniâ dic, quoniam, &c. Cic. pro. Dom.

Marce Tulli, quid agis? Cic. 1. Cat.

O noster Demea, ad omnia, alia ætate sapimus rectius. Ter.

Quoque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientiâ nostrâ? Cic.

Omnia, mi Lucili, aliena sunt: tempus tantùm nostrum est. Sen. ep. 1.

N. The point after a Vocative Case in the end of a clause is such as the nature of the clause requireth: whether Period, Colon, Comma, Interrogation, or Admiration: as,

Ausculta paucis, nisi molestum est, Demea. Ter. Ad.

Ità fac, mi Lucili: vindica te tibi. Sen. ep. 1.

Dii quidem essent, Demea, ac tuam rem constabilissent. Ter. Ad.

Quid fit, Ctesipho? Ter.

O mi Æschine! O mi germane! Ter. Ad.

(8) A *Comma* is set before or after an *Adjective* standing between two Substantives, and capable of being construed with either, to declare to which it belongs: as,

Summâ quidem auctoritate Philosophi, severè suavè atque honestè, hæc tria genera confusa, cogitatione distinguunt. Cic. 2. Off.

Where the *Comma* is set after *confusa*, to prevent its being thought to agree with *cogitatione*.

(9) A *Comma* is set before a *Relative* in a latter clause of a sentence, or before the word beginning that clause in which the Relative is: as,

Causa mea est melior, qui non contraria sevit
Arma. Ovid.

Ego Virgilium, præ quo cæteri Poetæ sordent.

(10) A *Comma* is set betwixt *quia* in one clause, and his corresponding Particle, *tam, æquè, non minùs, antè, priùs, post,* &c. in another: as,

Tam tè diligo, quàm meipsum. Ter.

Nihil æquè facere ad viperæ morsum, quàm taxi arboris succum. Suet.

Hæc res non minùs me malè habet, quàm te. Ter.

Si quàm audax est ad conandum, tam esset obscurus in agendo. Cic.

Quæ

Quæ causa antè mortua est, quàm tu natus esses. Cic.
Multò priùs scivi, quàm tu, illum amicum habere. Ter.
Annibal tertio post die, quàm venit, copias in aciem eduxit.
Postridie intellexi, quàm à vobis discessi. Cic.
Vicinum citiùs adjuveris in fructibus percipiendis, quàm aut fratrem, aut familiarem. Cic.

(11) A *Comma* is set before an *Adverb* having the force of a *Connexive Conjunction:* and generally when any *connexive Particle* is expressed or implied: as,

Non arbor erat relicta, non gubernaculum, non funis, aut remus Petron.
Curris, stupes, satagis, tanquam mus in matellâ. Petron.
Rumorem, fabulam fictam, falsam perhorrescimus. Cic.
Cujus omnis actio, ratio, cogitatio, totus denique tribunatus, nihil aliud fuit, nisi constans, perpetua, fortis, invicta defensio salutis meæ. Cic.

(12) A *Comma* is set before an *Infinitive Verb* with his *Accusative Case*, which may be resolved into a Finite Verb and a Nominative Case: as,

Non possum dicere, me nihil perdere. Sen. ep. 1.
Sed ostendere, mè ægrè pati, illi nolui. Ter. Ad. 1. 2.

(13) A *Comma* is set after an *Interjection* with his dependents if he have any; unless it be such an Interjection as properly requires another point, as Interjections of Admiration or Exclamation: as,

Oh, tibi ego ut credam, furcifer? Ter. And. 3. 5.
Hei mihi, cur non habeo spatium, ut—Ter. And. 4. 1.
Heus, proximus sum egomet mihi. Ter. And. 4. 1.
Hem! st, mane. Ib. *Hem, Pamphile, optimè te mihi offers.* Ib.

(14) A *Comma* is set after an *Ablative Case Absolute*, with his dependents, and before it too, if it be in the middle of a sentence: as,

Sed expositis adolescentium officiis, deinceps de beneficentiâ dicendum est. Cic. 2. Offic.
Credo pudicitiam, Saturno rege, moratam
In terris. Juv.
Deum, quo auctore cuncta proveniunt, sine murmuratione comitor. Sen. ep. 107.

Of a Semi-Period.

A *Semi-Period* (;) though it differ not in figure from a *Period*, yet is distinguished from it by this, that when a *Great Letter* follows, it is called *Periodus supina*, or absolutely a *Period*; but when a *Small Letter* follows, it is called *Periodus pendens*, or a *Semi-Period*. And 'twould do well to be set, not at the foot, but at the head of the foregoing word.

A *Semi-Period* is set betwixt Periods, whereof the latter hath

near dependence on the former for sense of matter, though not for construction of words; the latter beginning with a new *principal Verb*, as well as the former: as,

Cum [illegible] naturâ delibera, illa [illegible] tibi, se & diem fecisse, & noctem. [illegible] ep. 3.

Hodiernus dies solidus est, nemo ex illo quidquam mihi eripuit: totus inter stratum lectionemque divisus est. Sen ep 33.

The *proper place for a Semi-Period* (might it be so far admitted) were betwixt the former and latter part of a *Period* consisting of a *Protasis* and its *Apodosis*, or an *Enunciation* and its *Reason*: also betwixt a *Totum* and his *Parts* in a *Division*, and betwixt *Clause* and *Clause* in a *Transition*.

Of a Semi-Colon.

A *Semi-Colon* (;) is set where the *Pause* seems less than that of a *Colon*, and yet greater than that of a *Comma*: as,

Tu quid divitiæ possint, consideras; quid virtus, non item.

The *proper place for a Semi-Colon* seems to be between *member* and *member* in a *Division*, (if the parts be separated from the *Totum* by a *Semi-Period*) or in a *Subdivision* (if the parts be separated from the *Totum* by a *Colon*): also between *branch* and *branch* in a *Partition*; and generally betwixt *Opposites* in a *Distinction*.

Of a Semi-Comma.

A *Semi-Comma* (,) is set where a less *pause* or *distinction* is needful than that of a *Comma*.

And *its proper place*, if it may be admitted so far, will be: where the Words of a *simple Proposition* are ungrammatically (or, the parts illogically) placed, (viz. the *Predicate* before the *Subject*); where the words of one Clause are, for *elegancy of Composition*, inserted within the words of another; where an *Exegetical addition* is made to a foregoing *Substantive*, by the *Apposition* of another *Substantive* to it, or of an *Adjective*, or *Participle*, with its dependents on it; where a *Word* so stands *between two Clauses*, as that it may be taken to belong to either; and generally, where there is need of *more pauses* in pronunciation, than there are *distinct parts* of the *construction*: as where the *circumstances* of *actions* [viz. *time, place, manner, means*, &c.] are expressed together with them.

This *Period* of *Cicero*'s, pointed as follows, may, in part, be an *exemplification* of the foregoing Rules.

Denique, Quirites, quoniam me quatuor omnino genera hominum violârunt. Unum eorum, qui odio reipublicæ, quod eam, ipsis invitis, conservâram, mihi inimicissimi fuerunt: alterum, qui per simulationem amicitiæ, nefariè prodiderunt: tertium, qui, cum, propter inertiam suam, eadem assequi non possent, inviderunt laudi, & dignitati meæ: quartum, qui cùm custodes reipub. esse debuerunt, salutem meam, statum civitatis, dignitatem ejus imperii, quod erat penes

ipsos, vendiderunt: Sic ulciscar genera singula, quemadmodum quibusque sum provocatus: malos cives, rempub. bene gerendo; perfidos amicos, nihil credendo, atque omnia cavendo; invidos, virtutis & gloriæ serviendo; mercatores provinciarum, revocando domum atque ab iis provinciarum rationem repetendo. Cic. ad Quirit. post redit.

Of a Note of Interrogation.

A Note of *Interrogation* (?) is set at the end of a *Question*: as,

Quæ Nota domesticæ turpitudinis non inusta vitæ tuæ est?

This Note is sometimes continued through *many Clauses* of a *Period*: as,

Quousque tandem abutêre, Catilina, patientiâ nostrâ? quamdiu nos etiam furor iste tuus eludet? quem ad finem sese effrænata jactabit audacia?

Sometimes it is *omitted*, though the speech be interrogative, namely, when the Sentence is lengthned so far, that the Interrogative force, wherewith it began, is by little and little wasted and lost: as,

An tu putas esse bonos viros, qui amicitias utilitate colunt; nihil ad humanitatem, nihil ad honestum referunt; nec libenter ea curant, quæ ego nisi curarem præter cætera, prorsus me tuâ benevolentiâ, quâ magnam felicitatis meæ partem soleo ponere, indignum putarem.

Of a Note of Admiration.

A Note of *Admiration* (!) is set after words of *Admiring*, *Exclaiming*, or *Deploring*: as,

O vir fortis atque amicus! Ter. Phor.

Proh Deûm atque hominum fidem! Cic. 5. Verr.

Ah virgo infœlix! Virg. 6. Eclog.

Vah inconstantiam! Vah mea Antiphila!

Vah homo impudens!

Heu stirpem invisam! Virg. 2. Æn.

Heu pietas! heu prisca fides! Virg. 6. Æn.

Of a Parenthesis.

A *Parenthesis* ( ) incloses within one Sentence another Sentence which is no part of it: as,

Deus ad homines venit, imò (quod propius est) in homines venit. Sen. ep. 73.

Of a Parathesis.

A *Parathesis* [ ] incloses Synonymous words and Æquipollent Phrases, or Exegetical Descriptions added to the former, &c. as,

Aliud nihil, quàm [nisi] flere potui.

Non dubium est mihi, quin [nihil vereor, ne non] & auctior indies, & illustrior futura sit.

Pertusum quicquid in dolium infunditur [i. e. *quicquid ingratus feceris*] *perit.*

These

These few plain Rules and easie Directions may be sufficient for a young Learner. For fulness and accurateness of skill in *Pointing*, recourse must be had to *Grammarians* and *Rhetoricians* that have written of it; though I know none that has written so fully and accurately, as to be exactly followed by all others; most differing both from others, and from themselves herein; and in these Rules I prescribe to none. He that to me seems to have gone the furthest, and come the nearest to the setting of a Standard for others, is that ingenious *Grammarian*, Dr. *Lewis*, in his *Engl. Gram.* p. 1,2,3. and *Plain and short Rules for Pointing Periods*, p. 1,2,3.

It is the usual (and indeed the best) way to begin with Translating. To render this work easie and successful, it will be good to contrive *Englishes*, wherein the first things, and those that are most easie, yet necessary to make way for what is to follow, shall be proposed. Such will be little Sentences containing the Agreement of the Verb Personal with his Nominative Case; Adjective with his Substantive; or Substantive with his Substantive belonging to the same thing. Or the Government of an Accusative Case by a Verb; or a Genitive Case by a former Substantive, and the like. After some time spent in these kind of *Englishes*, more difficult may be proceeded unto; namely, such as contain in them the Agreement and Government of the Relative, &c. or else to put his Scholars to the Translating of some English Book, proper for that purpose: such as Mr. *Wase*'s Essay of a Practical Grammar, Dr. *Lewis*'s Vestibulum, Wits Commonwealth, Moral Philosophy, or a Treatise of mine own, composed for this very purpose; and intituled, *English Examples*, framed to the Rules of the *Latine Syntaxis*; unless he please to translate for them himself, *Tully*'s Sentences, or some Epistle of *Seneca*, or Oration of *Cicero*, &c.

Let the Teacher in the first place teach his Scholar to know, and then cause him to put the English words out of the Artificial into the Natural Order, and so read them, not suffering him, (as it is the use with some) just to fall to translating them, as he finds them lying in the English Book. The Natural Order being found, the work is half done; all will then run of it self almost.

The Scholar will be taught the Natural Order of the English by Precept and by Practice.

For *Precept*, the Teacher may be pleased to go according to his own judgment, and his Scholar's need. In the mean time he may instil into his Learner these General Rules.

General Rules touching the Natural Order of Words.

The Perſon ſpoken to, comes before the words ſpoken to him.

Words of Connexion come before the words of Clauſes connexed by them.

Words governing others, go before thoſe that are governed of them.

Words agreeing with others, follow thoſe that they agree with.

Words declaring others, follow thoſe that they declare.

Words depending on others, follow thoſe that they depend upon.

Theſe general Rules have ſome Exceptions, as moſt general Rules have. For the *Relative*, if it be not the Nominative Caſe, comes before the word that governs it, except that word be a Prepoſition; ſo doth the *Interrogative* and *Indefinite*, &c. And in Engliſh the *Adjective* oft comes before the *Subſtantive*, that it agrees with. But it is a ſure way ever to make the Subſtantive before the Adjective. But if the Teacher ſhall think theſe Rules too *General*, he may be pleaſed to give his Scholar theſe following, which are more *particular*.

Particular Rules for the Natural or Grammatical Order of Words.

Rule 1. In the firſt place ſtand words of *Excitation*, or ſtirring up to attention.

Such as are,

(1) *Interjections* and *Adverbs* of Exhorting, Wiſhing, Calling, Shewing, Asking: as, *O, obe, heu, age, agite, ut, utinam, heus, eia, ehodum, en, ecce, an, quomodo*, &c.

And with theſe go their Caſes depending on them.

(2) *Vocative Caſes* of Nouns or Pronouns.

If there be none of theſe in the Sentence, then in the firſt place ſtand *Adverbs* of *Forbidding, Likeneſs*, or *Relation*: Or *Conjunctions Caſuals*, or *Rationals*: as *Ne, nequaquam; quasmadmodum, ſicut; cum, quando, donec; quandoquidem, quare*, &c.

Rule 2. In the ſecond place (if any of the former ſort of words go before, elſe in the firſt place) ſtands that *Subſtantive*, which is the *Nominative Caſe* to the *Principal Verb Perſonal*, or that which ſtands inſtead of the *Nominative Caſe* to it.

And together with the *Subſtantive* goes the *Adjective* that agrees with it.

And if either the Subſtantive or Adjective do govern a caſual word, then together with the Subſtantive or Adjective goes the

casual word governed of it; as also any other word depending on it.

Rule 3. Next to the *Nominative Case* and his *Dependents* stands the *Verb Personal* that agrees with it.

But if the *Verb* be an *Impersonal*, or a *Verb* put *Impersonally*, then that, not having any *Nominative Case* before it, begins the *Sentence*: as, *Tædet me vitæ. Hæc olim meminisse juvabit*, Virg.

And as the *Nominative Case* stands before the *Verb* of a *Finite Mood*, so the *Accusative* stands before a *Verb* of the *Infinitive Mood*: as, *Te rediisse incolumem gaudeo.*

Rule 4. Next to the Verb stands the *Adverb* (if there be any) of *Place*, *Time*, *Quantity*, *Quality*, &c. or the like.

But if there be no *Adverb* coming with the *Verb* for the explaining of it, then next to the *Verb* stands the *casual word* governed of the *Verb*; or the *Infinitive Mood*, if there be one, with his *dependents*.

And if the Verb have several *casual words* after it, which are *governed* of it, then the *Dative* goes before the *Accusative*, and the *Accusative* before the *Genitive* and *Ablative*: as,

Dono tibi hoc munus. Dono te hoc munere. Admonito idam pristinæ fortunæ. Lupum auribus teneo.

Rule 5. After the *Verb* with his *dependents* follows the *Preposition*, together with the *casual word* governed of him, and his *dependents*: as, *Accipit in Teucros animum, mentemque benignam.* Virg. *Initia in potestate nostrâ sunt, de eventu fortuna judicat.* Sen.

Rule 6. After the *Verb* also with his *Dependents* follows the *Ablative Case Absolute*, and what depends on it: as, *Imperante Augusto natus est Christus.*

Though the *Ablative Case Absolute*, as virtually containing a *Verb* in it's *Clause*, may be set before the *Verb* too, as it may stand with most conveniency.

Note 1. *Interrogatives* and *Relatives* governed of a *Verb*, come *before the Verb* that governs them.

Also they come before any other *word* that *governs* them, except a *Preposition*.

And together *with the Interrogative* and *Relative* comes the *Casual word*, if it be expressed, that they agree with.

Also, if they be not governed of the *Verb*, then both they and the *word* that they are *governed of*, mostly come before the *Verb*: as,

Cujus numen adoro. Quibus rebus adductus feci?i.

Note 2. If any thing be *wanting*, necessary to *compleat* the *construction*, it is to be *supplied*: as, *Ventum erat ad Vestæ*; i. e. *templum.*

Note 3. *Figurative Construction* is to be resolved into *Proper*: as, *Velle suum*; i.e. *Voluntas sua. Id genus alia*; i.e. *ejus generis.*

If the Teacher think not these Rules to be enow, or not plain enough, he may be pleased to frame Rules of himself more plain and full: or else consult *Rhenius de Naturali Ordine Constructionis*, in his *Gram. Lat.* p. 540. and *Voss. De Ordine Grammatico*, in his *Gram. Lat.* p. 107. Or Mr. *Brinsly* in his *Ludus Literarius*, and *Posing of the Accidence*; Or Mr. *Lewis* in his *Grammar*, and *Rules of Pointing*, &c.

For *Practice*, which superadded to the knowledge of these few general Rules, will in a manner do the whole Work; I advise, that the Teacher do contrive or chuse out some Sentences, wherein the Words are artificially placed, and cause his Scholars (himself looking on) to reduce those into the Natural Order. For instance; Suppose the Scholars had this English to translate into Latine, *O this Glory, O* Cajus Cæsar, *which thou hast lately gotten, thou hast no Partner*: the way to do it right and surely, were to cast it into the Natural Order, *O* Cajus Cæsar, *thou hast no Partner of this glory, which thou hast gotten lately*. To reduce Verse into Prose after this manner, will be an useful practice to this end. And the labour will not be great. Three or four tryals to an ordinary Capacity will be sufficient.

When the Natural Order of the words of the English is found, then let the Scholar seek out Latine words for the English, and consider how to put them into good Syntax. Which when he hath a while studied upon, let him come before the Teacher, and do it *Viva voce*, as well as he can, the Teacher rectifying him where he is amiss, and helping him on with that, which he cannot do of himself. And still as the Learner goes on from word to word, let the Teacher require a Reason for his doing that word next; and be often asking, *What* is next to be done? and *why?* and *when* done? Ask *why* it is, or *ought* to be *thus done?* And make the Learner understand a Reason, and know a Rule for what he doth. And for the ease of the one, and help of the other, I shall here set down some Directions to be used as need shall be.

Directions for making plain Latine.

I. First, Read the Sentence carefully over, and mark the Points; and whether the Speech be Positive, Negative, Interrogative, Exclamative, or Admirative.

II. Secondly, Observe whether there be in it any *Connexive Particles*, which are to be made in the Order that they stand in, *viz.* In the beginning of the Sentence. Yet where *enim* is made for *for*, some word would be placed before it in the Latine; it not being usual to begin Sentences with that word, though sometimes it be done.

III. Thirdly, Observe whether there be in the Sentence any *Vocatives*

tive Case: for next after the Connexive Particles, if there be any, that is to be made; and if there be none, it is to be made first.

Fourthly, Seek out the *Principal Verb*; that usually is the first Verb.

But if the first Verb have coming immediately before it a Relative; as, *that*, *who*, *whom*, *which*, &c. or a Conjunction, as, *that*, *if*, &c. or if it be the Infinitive Mood, then seek further for another Verb.

1. Note, The Relative *that*, may be distinguished from *that* the Conjunction, by this, that the *Conjunction* hath ever a Nominative Case betwixt it and the following Verb; but the *Relative* hath none, unless when it self is not the Nominative Case to the Verb. Also the Relative *that*, may be varied by *who*, *which*, or *whom*: but the Conjunction *that* cannot.

2. Note, Sometimes a Verb of the Infinitive Mood begins a Sentence, and then stands instead of the Nominative Case to the following Verb: as, *To rise betimes in the morning is a very wholesome thing*; Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.

Fifthly, When the principal Verb is found out, then seek out the *Nominative Case* to it; and, unless there be any Adverbs, or Conjunctions, or Vocative Case to be set down first, begin with that. V.

Note, That word is the Nominative Case to the Verb, which with good sense answers to the Question, *who* or *what*, made by the Verb. As in this Sentence, *A clear conscience* which *needeth no excuse*, *feareth no accusation*. To know what is the *Nominative Case* to the Verb *feareth*, the way is to put the word *what* to the Verb *feareth*; saying, *What feareth no accusation?* to which Question, by reading the Sentence over again, it will appear what is to be answered, namely, that *A clear conscience feareth no accusation*; so the word *Conscience* is the Nominative Case to that Verb.

Sixthly, Having found out the Nominative Case to the Verb, consider of a Latine word fit for it, and set it down, minding therewithal the *Gender* and the *Number* of it. VI.

Seventhly, Having set down the Nominative Case, consider whether any other words come betwixt it and its Verb. VII.

If none come betwixt, then proceed to find out a Latine word proper for the English Verb: and when you have considered what *Mood* and *Tense* it should be of, then make it agree with its Nominative Case in *Number* and *Person*: that is, if the Nominative Case (for example) be of the Singular Number and third Person, then make your Verb to be of that Number and Person; and so what Number or Person soever your Nominative Case be, let your Verb be of the same Number and Person.

Yet, if the Nominative Case be a *Collective Noun*, or a *Noun*

of multitude, the *Verb* may be of the *Plural Number*, though the *Nominative Case* be but of the *Singular*: as, *Pars in frusta secant*, Virg. *In me turba ruunt*. Ovid.

If any words come between the *Nominative Case* and the *Principal Verb*, then make into *Latine* whatsoever hath dependence on the *Nominative Case*; namely,

1. That *Substantive*, if there be *any*, that, as belonging to the *same thing*, agrees with it: and together with *that*, or rather immediately after *that*, make all those *words*, if there be *any*, which *depend on*, or are *governed of it*. As in this *Sentence*; Brennus *the Captain of the* French *entring the Temple of* Apollo, *and spoiling it*, *was stricken with madness*, *and slew himself*: after [*Brennus*] the *Nominative Case* to the *Principal Verb* [*was stricken*] is set down, must be made into *Latine* the *Substantive* [*Captain*] agreeing in *Case* with [*Brennus*], and next to that the word [*French*] of the *Genitive Case*, governed of the foregoing word [*Captain*.]

2. That *Adjective*, whether *Noun*, *Pronoun* or *Participle*, that agrees with it, if there be *one*. As in this Sentence; *A clear conscience*, *which needeth no excuse*, *feareth no accusation*; the word [*Conscience*] which is the *Nominative Case* to the *Verb* [*feareth*] being made into *Latine*, and set down, the next *word* to be made is the *Adjective* [*clear*] which agreeth with that *Nominative Case*.

Note, What is the *Substantive* to any *Adjective*, may be known, by adding the *word* [*who*] or [*what*] to the *Adjective*; for the *word* answering to the *question* so made by the *Adjective*, will be the *Substantive* to it. As in the *foregoing Sentence*; by adding [*what*] to the *Adjective* [*clear*,] and saying by way of *question*, [*A clear what feareth no accusation?*] it will by reading the *Sentence* over again, be found, that the word [*Conscience*] is the *Substantive* to the *Adjective* [*clear*.]

Having found what is the *Substantive* to the *Adjective*, consider what *Gender* and *Number*, as well as what *Case* it is, and put the *Adjective* into the same *Gender*, *Number* and *Case*, that the *Substantive* is of. And this is to be observed in all parts of a *Sentence*, and not only in the beginning of it.

After the *Adjective* is made to agree with his *Substantive*, then consider whether there do any *words* come betwixt it and the *Principal Verb*, which *depend on it*, or are *governed of it*, and if there do come *any*, then next after it make them. As in this *Sentence*; Mordorus *spoiling* Circe's *Temple*, *was stricken mad with all his Souldiers*: after that the *Participle* [*spoiling*] which agreeth with the *Substantive* [*Mordorus*] is made, then must be made the word [*Temple*] governed of [*spoiling*]; and next after [*Circe's*] which is the *Genitive Case* governed of [*Temple*] the former of the *two Substantives*.

Nouns

Note, When two *Substantives* come together, if the former end in [*s*] then 'tis very like that the former is the *Genitive Case* governed of the *latter*. And whether it be so or no, may be known, by putting away [*s*] from the end of the *word*, and setting [*of*] before it, and reading before both, the *Substantive* that follows it. Thus if instead of [*Circe's Temple*] it be read [*the Temple of Circe*] it is visible, that [*Circe*] is the *Genitive Case* governed of [*Temple*], and that [*Circe's*] is put for [*of Circe*].

3. That *Substantive (if there be any)* that is governed of the foregoing *Substantive* in the *Genitive* or *Ablative Case*. As in this Sentence; *A man of no honesty is worthy of no trust*; after the Nominative Case [*A man*] is made into *Latine*, the words [*of no honesty*] are next to be made into *Latine*; whereof the first [*of*] is but a sign of the Case, and so is included in the *Latine* of the word [*honesty*;] the second word [*no*] is an Adjective agreeing with the following Substantive [*honesty*,] and therefore not to be made into *Latine*, till the word [*honesty*] wherewith it agrees, be first made (for Substantives are always to be made into *Latine* before their Adjectives, unless in *Interrogative* or *Indefinite* speeches) so that the third word [*honesty*] governed of the foregoing Substantive [*man*] is to be made into *Latine*, thus, *Vir probitatis nullius*; or, *Vir probitate nullâ*.

4. That Relative (if there be any) which hath reference to the foregoing Nominative Case, and what depends on it, which is a particular clause, branch or member of the Sentence. As in this Sentence; *A clear conscience, which needeth no excuse, feareth no accusation*; the Relative [*which*] with the rest of that Clause depending thereon, *viz.* the words [*needeth no excuse*] is to be made into *Latine* next after the Nominative Case to the principal Verb, *viz.* the word [*conscience*] and his Adjective [*clear:*] thus, *Conscientia pura, quæ excusatione non egit, accusationem non timet.*

VIII. Eighthly, When you have made into *Latine*, not only the Nominative Case, but also all that depends both on it, and on the words agreeing with, or governed of it, and is necessary, or fit to be made into *Latine* together with it, or immediately after it, then proceed to make into *Latine* the *Principal Verb*. And, as was said before, after you have by the Form of the Speech, and by the Signs of the Tenses, found out, what *Mood* and *Tense* the Verb is to be of, then make it accordingly of that *Mood* and *Tense*; and also of that *Number* and *Person*, that the Nominative Case, wherewith it agrees, is of.

The *Number* of the Nominative Case is known by its signifying one, or more of the things, or persons that it is the name of.

The *Person* of the Nominative Case, if it have a Pronoun joyned with it; namely, one of these [*Ego, tu, ille; nos, vos, illi*] is known

known by the *Person* of the Pronoun joyned with it. *Ego* and *Nos*, or, *I* and *we*, being of the first Person, and so that Noun that is joyned with them; *Tu* and *Vos*, or, *Thou* and *Ye*, being of the second Person, and so that Noun that is joyned with them: *Ille* and *Illi*, or *He* and *They* (and so all other Pronouns) being of the third Person, and so those Nouns that they are joyned unto.

If the Noun, which is of the Nominative Case, have no Pronoun expresly joyned with it, it is to be considered, what Pronoun it may have joyned with it, or put to stand for it; and such Person as that Pronoun is, (which generally is of the Third Person) such Person is the Nominative Case to be conceived to be of, and in such Person the Verb to agree with it. *Calliopias recessit*, i. e. *Ego*.

Generally the Nominative Case comes before the Verb. Yet sometimes the Verb, or at least the Sign of the Verb, is set before the Nominative Case, *viz.*

1. In *Interrogative speeches*, wherein a *Question* is asked; as *Lovest thou the King? Doth he love the King?*

2. In Verbs of the *Imperative Mood*, where something is commanded or permitted: as, *Love thou the King. Do thou love the King. Let us love the King.*

3. In certain Phrases or Forms of speaking, where these Particles [*it*] or [*there*] are joyned with the Verb: as, *It is my book*; *There came one to me*. Where [*book*] the Nominative Case to [*is*] in the former Sentence, and [*one*] the Nominative Case to [*came*] in the latter Sentence, is set after the Verb, whose Nominative Case it is, and with which it is to agree.

When [*it*] or [*there*] come with a Verb before a Noun, then mind, whether that Verb be not a *Verb Impersonal* (i. e. one of those Verbs commonly so called, and usually set without any Nominative Case before them,) for [*it*] and [*there*] are Signs of an Impersonal Verb; and if it be, then the word that seems to be the Nom. must be such Case as the Verb Impersonal doth govern: as, *There must be some body*; Oportet esse aliquem.

If the Nominative Case come after the Verb, or after the Sign of the Verb, then in writing down, or reading (*viva voce*) the English into Latine, write or read the words in the order they stand in; *viz.* First the Verb, then the Nominative Case: as, *Lovest thou the King?* Amas tu Regem? *Do thou love the King?* Ama tu Regem. *It is my book*, Est liber meus. *There came one to me*, Venit ad me quidam.

Yet this Order is not always necessarily to be observed, but may sometimes be altered: as, *Tune amas Regem?* or, *Tu amas Regem? Liber meus est. Quidam ad me venit*, may well enough be said.

IX. Ninethly, When the Principal Verb is made, then consider what

what word or words follow it, in order to the making of them into Latine.

1. If an *Adjective* come after it without any *Substantive*, then moſt likely that *Adjective* hath reference to that *Subſtantive* which is the Nominative Caſe to the Verb; and if ſo, it is to be made alſo in the Nominative Caſe, (what Caſe ſoever the Verb do govern after him:) as, *Peter ſleepeth void of care*; *Petrus dormit ſecurus*. And however, it muſt, by putting the word [*who* or *what*, &c.] to the Engliſh Adjective be found our, what Subſtantive the Adjective refers unto, with which when found, the Adjective (as was ſaid before) muſt be made to agree.

2. If a *Subſtantive* come after the principal *Verb*, (whether with or without an *Adjective*) in the ſame Clauſe or member of the *Period* or *Sentence*, it is then governed of the *Verb*, and is to be put in ſuch Caſe as the Verb, by vertue of its own ſignification, or uſe in *Authors*, or Rule in *Grammar*, requires to have after it, whether Genitive, Dative, Accuſative, or Ablative.

And the ſame thing is to be conſidered and obſerved touching all caſual words coming after all other Verbs, though they be not the Principal in the Sentence.

3. If there come betwixt the Verb and the Subſtantive any caſual Particle or Preposition, then it is to be conſidered, what Caſe words are to be of which have thoſe Particles or Prepoſitions coming before them; or what Caſe of a Noun, that Verb having this or that Particle, Sign or Token after it, is by Grammar Rule to govern; and accordingly the Engliſh is to be made into Latine.

Caſual Particles are, *of*, *to*, *for*, *in*, *into*, *with*, *through*, *from*, *by*, &c.

Grammar Rules guiding to the Caſe of the Verb by the token or ſign going before the Noun, are theſe: *All manner of Verbs put acquiſitively*; *that is to ſay*, *with theſe tokens* to, *or* for, *after them*, *will have a Dative Caſe*. *All Verbs require an Ablative Caſe of the inſtrument with this Sign* with *before it*, &c.

4. If there come more *Subſtantives* than *one* after the *Verb*, then it is to be conſidered, whether thoſe Subſtantives do belong to the *ſame*, or to *divers things?*

If they belong to the *ſame thing*, then they are to be put in the ſame Caſe: as, *They drive away the drones a ſluggiſh cattel from the hives*; *Ignavum fucos pecus à præſepibus arcent*. This is as well to be obſerved concerning Subſtantives coming *before the Verb*.

If the Subſtantives belong to the ſame thing, there may be with good Senſe and Engliſh ſet between them, theſe words, *who is*, or, *which is*, or, *which are*: as here, ſluggiſh cattel, *the drones*, *which are*, *a ſluggiſh cattel*.

If they belong *to divers things*, then it is to be conſidered what

what respect each *Substantive* hath to the *Verb* (for one and the same *Verb* may, upon divers considerations, govern many and divers Cases, *viz.* one of the *Thing*; another of the *Person*; another of the *Cause*, *Manner*, *Adjunct*, *Instrument*, &c. (as, *Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te præsente, propriâ manu*) and accordingly each *Noun* is to be put into such Case, as the *Verb* according to that respect that the *Noun* hath to the *Verb*, doth require of the *Noun*.

If *any Casual Particle* come betwixt the *Nouns*, then they belong to *divers things*, and have *different respects* to the *Verb*. But if there come no *Casual Particle* betwixt them, nor any *Comma*, or other *Point*, then they belong to *the same thing*, and have the same respect to the *Verb*, and are to be made by the *same Case* as was said before.

5. If there be any *Substantive* following the *Verb*, that hath no respect to the *Verb*, then it is governed of some other *Substantive* or *Adjective*, or other *Word*, coming betwixt the *Verb* and it; and such Case as the *Substantive* or *Adjective*, or other *Word* governs, *such Case* is that *Noun* to be of.

This is to be observed also in all *parts of the Sentence*, as well *before*, as *after the Verb*. For in all *parts of the Sentence*, the *following word* is governed of that *governing word* that in the *Natural Order* of the *words*, goes next before it, in the same *Clause* or part of the *Sentence*; except it be a *Relative*, or *Interrogative*, &c. which is not the *Nominative Case*, nor have a *Preposition* coming before them, are ever *governed* of some *word* coming after them, what *Case* soever they be of.

The *Natural Order of words*, is *that*, according to *which*, the *words* are placed so, that *words* depending on *others* for their *Gender*, *Number*, *Case*, *Person*, *Mood*, &c. are set after those whereon they *depend* (as hath been shewn) which is not observed, but much done contrary unto in that *Order of words*, which is called *Artificial*.

6. If any *other Verb* come after the *Principal Verb*, it is to be considered, whether there do any *casual word expressly*, or *implicitly* come betwixt the *foregoing* and *following Verb*; and if *no casual word* come betwixt, then the *latter Verb* is to be of the *Infinitive Mood*: as, *I desire to learn*.

But if *any casual word*, though but a *Pronoun*, come betwixt the *two Verbs*, then though the *latter Verb* may be *the Infinitive Mood*, (which if it be, then the *casual word* foregoing is generally to be the *Accusative Case*:) as, *I bid thee be gone*; or, *I bid that thou be gone*, *Jubeo te abire*; *I am glad that you are in health*, *Gaudeo te valere*: Yet it may also be the *Subjunctive Mood* without, either expressed, or understood together with it; (but then the *casual word* foregoing must be the *Nominative Case*:) as,

bid thee be gone, *Jubeo ut tu abeas*; *See that you have a good heart*, *Fac habeas animam fortem*: or with *quod* (accordingly as the nature of the Verb shall require): as, *Quod tu vales gaudeo.* See *Treat.* of *Engl. Partic.* ch. 75. *r.* 3, 4, 8.

And if the foregoing Verb do govern a Dative Case, then the casual word coming before the latter Verb (if it be made by the Infinitive Mood) may indifferently be put either in the Dative, as governed of the foregoing Verb; or in the Accusative, by reason of the Infinitive Mood following. So we may indifferently say, *Non licet homini*:——or, *Non licet hominem esse, ut vult.* See *Treat.* of *Engl. Partic. c.* 34. *r.* 21.

7. If there come *more Verbs than one*, after the principal Verb, it is to be considered, whether the latter also of them, as well as the former, be governed of the principal Verb, or of some former that goes before it self, yet comes after the principal Verb.

If it be governed of the *Principal Verb*, then some Copulative Conjunction expressly, or implicitely comes betwixt it and the former Verb; and it is so to be made, as the former was, for Mood.

If it be *not governed of the principal Verb*, then it is governed either of some foregoing Verb, or Noun-Substantive, or Adjective, and is the Infinitive Mood, which may be varied by a Subjunctive Mood with a Conjunction or Relative. See *Treat.* of *Engl. Partic. c.* 83. *r.* [illegible] *n.* 7.

Note, Verbs are governed of Substantives and Adjectives, as well as of Verbs: as, *Sed [illegible] tempus est ad id, quod instituimus, accedere.* Cic. *Num es paratus facere omnia?* Ter. But this is a *Grecism.*

And this is to be observed also in all parts of a Sentence or Period, and not only in the body, or latter end of it, or after the principal Verb. *Audax omnia perpeti Gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas.* Hor. *Sed si tantus amor casus cognoscere nostros, &c.* Virg.

If there be any *Relative* in the *Sentence*, then of every *Relative* is to be *considered* what it *agrees with*, and (if it be not the *Nominative Case*) what it is *governed* of. X.

The *Agreement* of the *Relative* is with its *Antecedent*; that is, a *Substantive* going before, which may again, without interruption or disturbance to the sense, be repeated together with the Relative: as, *Wretched is that man which is in love with money*; or, *wretched is that man, which* [*man*] *is in love with money.* Here [*man*] goes before [*which*], and is, or may be repeated together with it.

To know what word is the *Antecedent* to the *Relative*, add the word [*who*, *what*, *which*, or *whom*, &c.] to the *Relative* by way of question, and the word that, upon reading the *Sentence* over

over again, with good sense answers to that Question, is that Substantive Antecedent with which it agrees. As in this Example, *The man is wise which speaketh few things*; to know what is the Antecedent to the Relative [*which*], add the word [*what*] to the word [*which*], and then make a Question with those two words, and the following Verb; saying, *which what speaketh?* The Answer whereto will be visibly this, (upon reading the Sentence over again) *which man speaketh:* so that [*man*] is the Antecedent to the Relative [*which*]. For upon every such Question the Antecedent will be repeated in the Answer together with the Relative.

If the word [*that*] be the Relative, turn it into [*who*] or [*which*], &c. and then it will be the easilier found out, what is the Antecedent Substantive wherewith it is to agree: as, *Wretched is the man that* [i. e. *which*] *is in love with money.*

Having found what word is the Antecedent to the Relative, make it agree with it in *Gender*, *Number* and *Person*; that is, set it down of the same Number and Gender, and suppose it to be of the same Person with its Antecedent; and let the *Person of the Relative* appear by the *Person of the Verb*, to which the Relative is the *Nominative Case*, in making the *Verb*, that hath the *Relative* for his *Nominative Case*, to be of that *Person* which that *Substantive* is of, that the *Relative* refers unto, and agrees with. If the Relative *be not the Nominative Case*, then the Person of it is not to be heeded. The *Relative* is the *Nominative Case* to the *Verb*, when there comes no Nominative Case betwixt the *Relative* and the *Verb*.

If the Relative be *not the Nominative Case* to the following *Verb*, nor have a *Preposition* coming with it, nor be together with his *Substantive* put *absolute*, then it is governed generally of the Verb that follows it, though sometimes of other words; as may be seen in the Accidence Rules for the Case of the Relative.

The *Relative* that is governed of the *Verb*, must be such Case, as any other *Substantive* were to be of, if it followed the Verb; because a Substantive is ever implied in it, if not expressed with it.

If the *Relative* be not *governed* of the *Verb*; then, if it be a casual word that the Relative is *governed of*, such Case as that word would govern after it, such Case must the Relative be of that comes before it. And that *casual word*, of which the Relative is *governed*, must be such Case as the Verb will govern after him: as, *Cujus numen adoro*; *Cui similem non vidi*; *Quorum optimum ego habeo.* Unless there be some other word in the Sentence governing that word of which the Relative is governed. as, *Quæ nunc non est narrandi locus.* Which word yet is to be such Case as the Verb governs after it.

To

To know what word the Relative is governed of (whether it be the Verb, or other word that governs it) the way is, to put a Demonstrative in the stead of it, and then read that Clause in which it stands according to the Natural Order of the words: for then the word that governs the Demonstrative that is put in instead of the Relative, will go before it; and that word that governs the Demonstrative following it, is the word that governs the Relative going before it. *To know what word the Relative is governed of.*

For Example. In English, in this Sentence, [*you dispraise him, whom all men commend*] if we take out the Relative [*whom*], and in the stead of it put in the Demonstrative [*him*], and then read that Clause in which it stands, according to the Natural Order of the words, thus, *All men commend him*; it is plain that the Demonstrative [*him*] is governed of the Verb [*commend*]. And so by that it is known, that it is of that Verb, that the Relative [*whom*] is governed. Thus also in Latine, in this Sentence, *Virtutem, cui similem non vidi*, if instead of the Relative [*cui*], we do put in the Demonstrative [*huic*], and then read that Clause into which it is put, in the Natural Order of the words, thus——*Non vidi similem huic*, it is plain that [*huic*] is governed of the Adjective [*similem*] going next before it. And by that it appears, that of that Adjective [*similem*] is the Relative [*cui*] governed.

Yet further, to bring Children by easie steps to the understanding of that *great difficulty*, which lies in putting the *Relative into its right Case, Gender, and Number*, wherein most usually they fail, the Teacher may be pleased to take this course with them. *How to bring Children to understand the greatest Difficulties about the Relative.*

1. Give them *Englishes* wherein the *Antecedent Substantive*, to which the *Relative* refers, shall not only go before the *Relative*, but be also repeated together with it: as, *He had a knife, with which knife he would have slain himself.*

3. Cause them in their *Daily Translations* to enclose within a *Parathesis*, or two square *Brackets* [ ] the repeated Substantive, wherewith the Relative, as being a perfect Adjective, must agree in Case, Gender and Number, after this form; *Ferrum habuit quo* [*ferro*] *se occideret.*

3. Cause them in the fair writing of their whole Weeks Exercises, to omit the repetition of the Antecedent Substantive, yet in the construing thereof, (as also of their Daily Lectures) to express it, as if it were written. As if, for example, Having written *Ferrum habuit quo se occideret*, they should in Construing express *ferro* with *quo*, saying, *quo ferro*, with which knife.

4. After they have been practised for some time in this kind of Exercise, then give them *Englishes* to translate, wherein the Antecedent Substantive shall only be expressed in the Clause going before the Relative, and not repeated together with the Relative in the same Clause where it is: as, *He had a knife, with*

which

which he would have slain himself. Yet in the Translating them cause them still to express the *Substantive* together with the *Relative*; *Ferrum habuit quo* [*ferro*] *se occideret.* This will haunt them where-ever they meet with a *Relative*, even of course to seek out a *Substantive* for it, to express together with it. On which *repetition* of the *Substantive* together with the *Relative* there be abundant *Examples* in *Classick Authors.* Such is that of *Cicero's*; *Cùm viderem ex eâ parte homines, cujus partis nos vel principes numerabamur*, pro Quint. And that of *Cæsar's*; *Legem promulgaverat, quâ lege regnum* Jubæ *publicaverat*, 2. Bell. Civ. That of *Terentius*, *Habet bonorum exemplum, quo exemplo sibi licere id facere, quod illi fecerunt, putat*, Heaut. Prol. And that of *Plautus*, *Est causa, quâ causâ simul mecum ire veritus est*, Epid. 1. 1. Yet this Repetition, it will be the Master's discretion to order his Scholars to omit, as he shall see cause.

5. Teach them to fill up such *Elliptical Passages* as have only that *Case* of the *Substantive* expressed, in which the *Relative* coming together with it, doth agree; that, wherein it might, or ought to differ from it, being omitted. Thus, *Urbem quam statuo, vestra est*; i. e. *Urbs vestra est, quam urbem statuo*; or, *Quam urbem statuo, vestra urbs est.* So, *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit? Quas dedit Eunuchus turbas, quem nobis dedisti Eunuchum?* or, *Quas turbas dedit Eunuchus, quem Eunuchum nobis dedisti nobis?* So, *Quis non malarum, quas amor curas habet, haec inter obliviscitur?* i.e. *Inter hæc quis non obliviscitur curarum malarum, quas curas amor habet?* So, *Ad Cæsarem quam misi epistolam, ejus exemplum fugit me tum tibi mittere*; i.e. *Fugit me tum tibi mittere ejus epistolæ exemplum, quam ad Cæsarem misi epistolam.* So, *Quos pueros cum Mario miserunt, epistolam mihi attulerunt hoc exemplo*; i. e. *Pueri illi hoc exemplo mihi attulerunt epistolam, quos pueros cum Mario miserunt.*

6. Give them such *Englishes* for Translation, as shall have in them *man*, or *thing*, (either *expressed*, or *understood* in the *Pronoun* put for them,) to be the *Substantive* wherewith the *Relative* must agree. As, *Wretched is he*, [i. e. *the man*] *that is in love with money: Miser est* [*homo, qui* [*homo*] *nummos admirans*]. *That* [i. e. *that thing*] *is good, which* [i. e. *which thing*] [*things*] *desire. Bonum illud est, quod omnia appetunt.*

Thus by easie steps will Children be brought, not only to understand how to render those Relative Particles, *that, who, which, whose, whereof, whom*, &c. in right Case, Gender or Number (that the doing of which there is scarce any thing more hard to them) but also to overcome the greatest Difficulties, that lie in the Assignment of the *Relative*. And now I return to go on with those *Directions* for *Plain Latine making*, which yet remain.

If the Speech be Negative, then observe to set the Negative Particles before the Verb. XI.

The *Negative Particle* usually comes betwixt the Verb and the Sign of the Verb, if any Sign of the Verb be expressed. As, *I do not perceive, what your intent is.* But if no Sign of the Verb be expressed, then it comes after the Verb: as, *I perceive not, what your intent is*; *Ego, quid agas, nihil intelligo.*

Interrogative Speeches have the same Observations, mostly that are in *Assertive* Speeches. The Interrogative Pronominal Particles being Nominative Cases to Verbs, and being governed of a Preposition before them, or else of a Verb, or some other word coming after them. As, *Quis enim erat, qui non sciret? Quid hoc impudentius dici, aut fingi potest? Quæ civitati facta est injuria? Quantus fluctus excitari concionum videtis? Cui quæso tandem probasti? Cui novæ calamitati locus ullus relictus esset.* XII.

In *Admirative* or *Exclamative* Speeches, Casual words are put into divers Cases, without any Verb expressed to govern them In such Case by vertue of the Particle of *Admiring*, or *Exclaiming*, accordingly as use hath subjoyned such and such Cases unto such and such Particles, or as that Verb governs, which is understood together with the Verb. XIII.

Of the Ablative absolute.

When a Substantive comes together with a Participle (expressed or understood) in the same Clause, and neither is the Nominative Case to any following Verb, nor hath before it any other word of which it is governed, then it is put *Absolute*, and so is to be made by the *Ablative Case*. As, *The King coming, the enemies fled*; *Rege veniente hostes fugerunt.* X

Note. If any other Nominative Case, though but of a Pronoun, come between the Substantive that hath the Participle joyned to it, and the Verb, then that Substantive is not the Nominative Case to the Verb. But if no Nominative Case come betwixt, then it is (not put absolute, but) the Nominative Case to the Verb. As, *The King coming, made the enemies flye*; *Rex veniens hostes fugavit.*

In speaking of this Ablative Case I follow the received way; not being ignorant what is thought by Learned Persons of that Construction; namely, that it is governed of some Preposition understood, viz. *à, ab, sub, cum*, or *in*. See *Treat.* of *Engl. Par.* c. 20. *v.* 1. *n.* 3.

Well now, when the Learner is able, what by his own study, and what by these Directions, and what by his Teachers further Instruction, where it is needful, to read the English into Latine *vivâ voce*, then let him go, and write it down in a loose Paper, and bring it to his Teacher, to consider of his manner of *writing*,

ting, and *pointing* it; who is accordingly to inform him of wh
he knows not, and rectifie him in what he sees amiss.

That being done, let the Master cast the words out of the N
tural into the Artificial Order, and mend the Phrase, if need b
and then cause the Scholar to transcribe the Exercise so done i
to his fair book, and after that get it to construe, and parse, a
say by heart.

As in translating it out of *English* into *Latine*, he observed t
Natural Order of the *words*, so in construing (as it is called) o
of *Latine* into *English*, let him exactly, as far as the *Idiom*
the *Languages* will permit, observe the *Natural Order* of th
words.

☞ Let the Scholar's parsing be performed all by himself alon
taking the *words* in the *Natural Order*, and going of himse
(without being asked any thing by his Teacher, save where h
omits any thing necessary) from word to word, till he have g
over the whole; declining Nouns and Verbs, and giving Rul
for the Genders of the one, and Preterperfect Tense and S
pines of the other: And so of the other *Parts of Speech*, let h
say what is fit to be said. But especially let him give accou
of the *Syntax* of every word; why this Substantive is of the N
minative Case; that of the Genitive; the other the Dative, a
cusative, or Ablative. Why this Adjective is of this, that,
the other Case, Gender, Number; why this *Relative* is of th
or that Number, or Person; and why of this, or the other Ca
and what governs it; and why this *Verb* is of this Mood, Numb
Person, *&c.* maintaining and justifying every thing by *Gram*
Rule, or Example from Classick Authors.

And here by the way let me take occasion to advise, that
same course be observed in his Authors, that he learns, confi
ing his Lectures therein, in the Natural Order, and parsing th
all by himself alone in that order. It is scarce imaginable h
much more beneficial this way of *parsing alone* is, beyond t
other more usual way of asking questions skippingly, here a wo
and there a word, according to the Master's fancy, list, or lei
And if there be more than one together, one may take one piec
and another another piece by courses, till all be done. If one
agreement do get one piece, and another another, it will not
much amiss to wink at it for a while, till they be a little perfect
it; that plot is quickly broke, by putting them but once or tw
out of their road.

Lastly, To return, on the *Repetition-day*, let the Scholar
all his Weeks work by heart, and both read it out of *English*
to *Latine*, and out of *Latine* into *English*: and where
Teacher thinks needful, let him ask him a Rule for, or a Rea
of the Construction, or the like.

Eng

English Examples framed according to the Rules of the Three Latine Concords.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

Concordantia Nominativi & Verbi.

¶ Verbum Personale cohæret cum Nominativo numero & personâ: ut. *Nunquam fera est ad bonos mores via.*

Fortuna nunquam perpetuò est bona.

* A Verb Personal agreeth with his Nominative Case in Number and Person, as, *Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis*, The Master readeth, and ye regard not.

* And the Nominative shall in making and construing Latine, be set before the Verb.

† Examples, where Personal Pronouns are only Nominative Cases.

Indicative Mood Present Tense Active with a Sign.

I do fear, thou dost langh, he doth strike, we do cry, ye do call, they do answer.

Without a Sign.

I love, thou teachest, he readeth, we hear, ye learn, they play.

Indic. Pres. Pass.

I am loved, thou art taught, he is read, we are called, ye are stricken, they are frighted.

I am bought, thou art sold, he is beaten, we be blamed, ye be wounded, they be healed.

Preterimperfect Tense Active.

I did love, thou didst seek, he did find, we did sit, ye did stand, they did walk.

I mourned, thou weepedst, he laughed, we sang, ye leap'd, they danced.

Passive.

I was named, thou wast called, he was reproved, we were warned, ye were scourged, they were killed.

I was girded, thou were armed, he was cut, we were hurt, ye were led, they were drawn.

Preterperf. Active.

I have fought, thou hast overcome, he hath washed, we have wiped, ye have scratched, they have bitten.

I have mown, thou hast reaped, she hath scattered, we have gathered, ye have laid up, they have carried out.

Passive.

I have been carried, thou hast been bound, he hath been blamed, we have been praised, ye have been healed, they have been saved.

I have been honoured, thou hast been crowned, she hath been decked, we have been painted, ye have been nursed, they have been clothed.

Preterpluperf. Active.

I had tried, thou hadst conquered,

ed, he had said, we had believed, ye had held, they had escaped.

I had written, thou hadst received, she had read, we had recalled, ye had replied, they had granted.

Passive.

I had been seen, thou hadst been heard, he had been accused, we had been condemned, ye had been saved, they had been killed.

I had been baptized, thou hadst been confirmed, she had been instructed, we had been corrected, ye had been admonished, they had been commended.

Future Tense Active.

I will ask, thou wilt answer, he will have, we will hold, ye will command, they will obey.

I shall touch, thou shalt perceive, she shall crave, we shall give, ye shall feign, they shall frame.

Passive.

I will be sought, thou wilt be found, he will be taken, we will be freed, ye will be detained, they will be dismissed.

I shall be eased, thou shalt be hardened, she shall be received, we shall be rejected, ye shall be commended, they shall be lamented.

* Except a *question* be asked, and then the Nominative is set after the Verb——

Love I? teachest thou? readeth he? hear we? learn ye? play they?

Feared I? laughest thou? striketh he? cry we? called ye? answered they.

* Or after the Sign of the Verb: as,

Amas tu? *Lovest thou?* Venitne Rex? *Doth the King come?*

Do I play? dost thou learn? doth he profit? do we see? do ye hear? do they feel?

Did I lose? didst thou seek? did he find? did we sit? did ye stand? did they walk?

Have I sought? hast thou overcome? hath he read? have we heard? have ye sung? have they danced?

Had I tried? hadst thou consented? had he said? had we believed? had ye staid? had they departed?

Shall I ask? wilt thou answer? will he have? shall we hold? shall ye command? will they obey?

Am I loved? art thou feared? is he called? are we heard? be ye stricken? be they frighted?

Was I touched? wert thou named? was he warned? were we blamed? were ye scourged? were they killed?

Have I been honoured? hast thou been fed? hath she been nursed? have we been decked? have ye been cloathed? have they been spoiled?

Had I been heard? hadst thou been seen? had she been condemned? had we been saved? had ye been killed? had they been buried?

Shall I be touched? wilt thou be perceived? shall he be sought? shall we be found? will ye be led? will they be drawn?

* Likewise if the Verb be of the Imperative Mood: as, *Amato ille, Let him love.*

Write thou, fight he, eat ye, drink

drink they, ſing thou, dance he, write ye, read they, do thou go, let him ſtay, run we, do ye ſit, let them ſtand.

Laugh thou, ſhout he, let us ſleep, walk ye, let them ride.

Paſſive.

Be thou ruled, let him be broken, be we held, be ye bound, let them be ſcourged.

Be thou loved, be he feared, let us be tamed, be ye enriched, be they advanced.

* And ſometimes when this Sign *it*, or *there* cometh before the Engliſh of the Verb: as, *Eſt liber meus*, It is my book; *Venit ad me quidam*, There came one to me.

It is a Horſe; there was a Mare; it is night; it was day. There blows wind; there falls rain; there comes a man; there went a woman. It is I; it was thou. It had been he; it may be we; it might be ye, it ſhall be they.

† Yet it is not neceſſary, that in all theſe Caſes the Nominative be always ſet after the Verb: for *tu erras?* may as well be ſaid, as, *Erras tu? Liber eſt*: as, *Eſt liber.*

Potential Mood Preſent Tenſe.

I may command, thou mayeſt intreat, he may weep, we may laugh, ye may fight, they may overcome.

I may be touched, thou mayſt be tickled, he may be burned, we may be buried, ye may be covered, they may be concealed.

Preterimperfect Tenſe.

I might ſay, wouldſt thou believe? ſhould he read? we ought to learn. Could ye ſee? they ſhould think. Should I be commended? thou wouldſt be diſpraiſed. Ought he to be deſpiſed? we ſhould be blamed. Ye would be condemned, ought they to be puniſhed?

Preterperfect Tenſe.

I might have thought, thou wouldſt have believed, he ſhould have ſaid, we ought to have underſtood, ye ſhould have perceived, they would have pronounced.

I ſhould have been afflicted, thou wouldſt have been bewailed, he ought to have been vexed, we ſhould have been freed, ye would have been oppreſſed, they ought to have been warned.

Preterpluperfect Tenſe.

I had felt, thou hadſt feared, he had needed, we had believed, ye had come, they had gone.

I had been compared, thou hadſt been preferred, he had been refuſed, we had been choſen, ye had been accepted, they had been rejected.

Future Tenſe.

I ſhall have eaten, you will have drunk, he will have ſpoken, we ſhall have ſinned, ye will have ſorrowed, they ſhall have repented.

I ſhall have been ſaid, thou ſhalt have been ſeen, he ſhall have been fed, we ſhall have been filled, ye ſhall have been honoured, they ſhall have been feared.

† Examples where Nouns are the Nominative Caſes; and firſt Nouns Subſtantives Proper.

Peter *sleepeth*, Paul *prayeth*, Joseph *ariseth*, Mary *runneth*, Thomas *doubteth*, John *believeth*.

Elizabeth *rejoyced*, Lydia *did hearken*. Cæsar *fought*, Pompey *fled*.

Cicero *hath entreated*, Cato *had resisted*, Antony *shall drink*, Ovid *will write*.

The Horaces *kill*. *The* Curiaces *are killed*. *The* Decius's *died*. *The* Fabius's *were slain*. *The* Romans *have conquered*. *The* Parthians *have been vanquished*.

The Persians *will flie*. *The* Macedonians *shall persue*. *The* Arabians *shall be affrighted*. *The* Ægyptians *will be destroyed*.

Doth George *speak*? *Did* Thomas *hear*? *Hath* Edward *taught*? *Had* Richard *learned*? *Will* Robert *profit*?

Weeps Cleopatra? *Sighs* Helena? *Do the* Trojans *mourn*? *Did the* Grecians *sing*? *Have the* Athenians *fought*? *Had the* Lacedæmonians *fled*? *Will the* Gauls *be beaten*? *Shall the* Spaniards *be quieted*.

Would the Hunns *have been drowned*? *Might the* Scythians *have been tamed*? *Could the* Carthaginians *have been destroyed*? *Should the* Italians *have been enriched*? *Ought the* Brittons *to have been robbed*?

Secondly, Nouns Substantives Common.

And first without any Particle annexed.

Fire burneth, *wool is burned*, *night hideth*, *day discloseth*, *winter washeth*, *spring draweth on*, *summer approacheth*, *harvest is ended*.

Wine is drunk, *bread is baked*, *meat is eaten*, *flesh is roasted*, *corn is sown*, *hay is mown*.

Doth gold glister? *Did silver ting*? *hath braß rusted*? *will glaß break*? *is iron heated*? *was lead melted*? *hath copper been beaten*? *had tin been run*? *shall pewter be scoured*? *Milk is curded*, *cream is streined*, *butter is churned*, *cheese is pressed*, *curds are sweetned*, *cheese-cakes are baked*, *trees grow*, *flowers smell*, *leaves shoot*, *apples ripen*, *pears hang*, *plums fall*, *berries rot*.

Boughs were shaken, *cherries are picked*, *walnuts are dashed*, *small nuts are gathered*, *shells are cracked*, *kernels are eaten*.

Swans sung, *cocks crowed*, *hens cackled*, *chickens cheaped*, *pies chattered*.

Men fought, *women scolded*, *boys wrastled*, *girls scratched*, *children cried*, *servants laughed*.

Let Knaves be cudgelled, *let Rogues be scourged*, *let beggars be whipped*, *let drunkards be fined*, *let thieves be hanged*, *let rebels be beheaded*. *Should scolds be ducked*? *would whores be shamed*? *ought whore-masters to be gelded*? *could adulterers be branded*?

Travellers will talk, *Soldiers will brag*, *Lawyers will wrangle*, *Merchants shall complain*, *Scholars will dispute*, *fools will prate*.

Have eyes seen? *have ears heard*? *have noses smelt*? *have tongues tasted*? *have hands felt*?

Hath musick pleased? *hath learning flourished*? *will honour*

be sought? shall vertue be honoured? will vice be punished?

Arts are learned, ignorance is banished, servants are beaten, slaves are sold, much is spoken, little is minded, nothing is done, all is lost.

Secondly, with the Particle [*a*] annexed.

A dog barketh, a thief trembleth, a lion roared, a hare started, a partridge flew, a hawk pursued, a sword hath cut, a spear hath pierced, a mouse had slept, a cat had watched, a bird will flie, a fish will swim.

Is a pen made? was a book written? hath a pen-knife been whetted? had a line been drawn? will a blot be wiped out? shall a whetstone be rubbed? may a sponge be squeezed.

Thirdly, with the Particle [*the*] annexed.

The father doth sing, the mother laugheth, the child playeth.

The young man leaped, the old man danced.

The Lamb doth frisk, the Ew did bleat, the Bull hath lowed, the Ox had laboured, the Sow shall farrow, the Pig will squeak.

The Hog is fatted, the Heifer was killed, the Deer hath been hunted, the Horn hath been winded, the Huntsman will be wearied, the hunting shall be ended.

Is the King crowned? were the Rebels vanquished? have the Souldiers been honoured? had the Rebels been subdued? will the Citizens be oppressed? shall the Country-men be burdened?

Let the Fathers command, let the Children obey, let the Commanders direct, let the Souldiers fight.

The Husbands may labour, the Wives should care, the Servants should work, the Children could play.

The Swallows may have come, the Woodcocks might have flated, the Cranes shall have departed.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

Concordantia Substantivi & Verbi.

¶ Adjectivum cum Substantivo, Genere, Numero & Casu consentit: ut Juven. *Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima Cygno.*

¶ Ad eundem modum Participia & Pronomina Substantivis adnectuntur: Ovid. *Donec eris felix multos numerabis amicos. Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes.* Senec. *Non hoc primum pectora vulnus mea senserunt: graviora tuli.*

* The Adjective, whether it be Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, agreeth with his Substantive in Case, Gender, and Number: as, *Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur*, A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter. *Homo armatus*, A man armed. *Ager colendus*, A field to be tilled.

Hic vir, This man. *Meus herus est*, It is my Master.

English Examples.

(I.) Where the Adjective comes together with the Substantive set next after it.

A good man is a wise man; and an evil man is a foolish man.

A black Swan is a rare bird; and a white Crow is a strange sight.

The evil life of a good Preacher brings great disgrace to sound doctrine.

Evil words corrupt good manners: and evil manners destroy great Kingdoms.

Soft fire makes sweet malt: and sweet malt makes sweet ale.

A tall man with a long neck in a white doublet, killed two Sparrows sitting on a high house with one stone.

The untimely death of a loving Husband is a bitter fountain of much grief to a kind wife.

The eager contention of disagreeing Princes, is the sad destruction of flowrishing States.

My son loves thy daughter: and thy daughter is in love with my son.

Our Lad is gone to your house: and your house is quite gone to decay.

Your Master is gone with his Wife to his garden; and our Children with their hands pluck up fine flowers.

She views her wrinkled face in a broken glass, and washeth her yellow teeth with red wine.

He holds three Eggs in one hand: and reads a long letter in a little space.

When Civil Wars cease, then expect happy times: and when happy times return, then expect Civil Wars.

(II.) Where the Adjective comes together with the Substantive set next before it.

A house full of Gold coined, would not make a Miser rich.

A Temple adorned with Pictures innumerable, was to be seen on a hills top.

A tongue speaking things shameful, bringeth to the speaker things harmful.

Water flowing from a fountain inclosed, ran in a chanel new digged.

A wife bemoaning a husband dead, sate besides children weeping.

A Traytor ready to shed blood Royal, deserves to be cut off by death untimely.

A Conscience wounded is a burden insupportable.

Land fruitful and well tilled, brings a crop plentiful in a year seasonable.

(III.) Where the Adjective is parted from his Substantive coming before it.

A Kingdom is happy when peace is preserved carefully, and justice administred duly.

The man went away sorrowful, when he saw that a woman lay weeping upon the ground.

Wisdom is accounted vain where vice is found to be gainful.

The Shepherd is said to be diligent, when the flock is thriving.

When

Where the Teacher is skilful and painful, there the profiting of the Learner is hopeful.

(IV) Where the Adjective is parted from his Substantive coming after it.

Happy are the times, when truth and peace do flourish.

Glorious in all ages will be a wise, righteous, and valiant King.

Hateful is the name, woful is the life, and fearful is the death of a Traytor.

Fair is thought the child by the fond mother.

Terrible, men say, will be the Sintence of the last Judgment.

Unquenchable, it is believed, shall the fire of Hell be.

Great is the peace of an undefiled Conscience.

Mine is the comfort, thine will be the glory of deeds well done.

Adjectives of the Comparative Degree with their Substantives.

Yellow Gold is more precious than white Silver.

Despised vertue is more chuſable than honoured vice.

Cicero *was eloquenter than* Cato: *but* Cato *was constanter than* Cicero.

Of the two Kingdoms, Spain *is the larger, but* France *is the richer.*

Unjust Peace is better than a just War: and war abroad is more desirable than war at home.

A little with quietneſs is more wiſhable than a great deal with vexation.

The Sea is deeper than a Bucket, and Eternity is longer than Time.

Adjectives of the Superlative Degree with their Substantives.

The shortest day hath the longest night.

The holiest life may expect the happiest death: and the best work hope for the biggest reward.

The learnedest Clerks are not always the wiſest men: nor are the best Preachers evermore the holiest Christians.

Cicero *was the most eloquent of Pleaders: but* Cæsar *was the most prudent of Commanders.*

Solomon *was the wiſest of Kings; and* Hercules *was the strongest of men.*

Socrates *was accounted the wiſest of Philosophers; and* Alexander *the most fortunate of Conquerors.*

Aristides *was the justest among the* Grecians: *and* Craſſus *the richest among the* Romans.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

Concordantia Relativi & Antecedentis.

* When ye have a Relative, ask the question *who* or *what?* and the word that answers to the question shall be the Antecedent to it.

The Antecedent most commonly is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The

The Antecedent is sometimes rehearsed again expresly with the Relative in the same clause that it is in: as,

Cùm viderem ex ea parte homines, cujus partis nos vel principes numerabamur. Cic.

Diem scito esse nullum, quo die non dico pro reo. Cic.

Legem promulgaverat, quâ lege regnum Jubæ publicaverat. Cæs.

So in English.

I have a horse, which horse is ewenty years old.

He bought a house, of which house his Grandfather had been the owner.

Thou hast a friend, to which friend thou mayest commit all thy secrets.

A certain bird was sitting on a tree, which bird one felled thence with a stone.

I have a dog, than which dog no Lion is more fierce.

† And when the Antecedent is rehearsed together with the Relative, it is of the same Case also, as well as of the same Gender, and Number, and Person that the Antecedent is of: as in the forenamed Examples.

But mostly the Antecedent is not set together in the same clause with the Relative, but in another clause before it distant from it: and then as it sometimes happens to be of the same Case with it, so many times it differs in Case from it.

¶ Relativum cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero & persona: ut, *Vir bonus est quis? Qui consulta patrum, qui leges juraque servat.*

* The Relative agreeth with his Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as, *Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur,* That man is wise that speaketh few things or words.

English Examples.

Thou hatest me without a cause, who am thy best friend in the world.

I love thee dearly, who yet art most unkind to me.

Despisest thou me, who am the Queen of Beauties?

He married his daughter, whom he had so dearly loved, to an unworthy person.

They persecute us innocent men, who have done good to them.

We Fathers love you Children, who are obedient unto us.

Husbands love us wives, who are kind to them.

We men honour you women, who adorn your selves with vertue and modesty.

I cannot but love that man dearly, who hath been kind to me in my adversity.

I cannot but keep that Man well, which hath saved me in time of danger.

I cannot but think that Kingdom happy, which is governed by a just and merciful King.

Happy are those Kings whom Subjects love, and enemies fear.

Miserable are those Countries, which War and Famine do vex and waste.

Glorious are those times in which Peace and truth do flourish.

Nor

Now when the Teacher discerns his Scholar by this Practice to be any thing perfect at understanding and finding out the Natural Order of Words; and that he can make a piece of ordinary English into plain and true Latine in that way, then let him put him forward to make his Latine good, as well as true. Now that will be done by teaching him some competency of skill in these five things, viz. (1) The Artificial Order of Words. (2) The use of Phrases. (3) The Variation of Phrases. (4) The Elegancies of the Particles. (5) The Idioms of both the Languages English and Latine. Of all which I shall speak something in Order.

CHAP. V.

Of the Artificial Order and Elegant placing of Words.

THE *Artificial Ordering* and Elegant placing of Words conduceth very much to the making of Latine Good. To evince this, if there were need, it might suffice to say, that of the very same words, according to the different Placing of them, may be made Latine very Elegant, or very Unelegant. For instance, the words *Rogo, ut venias ad me*, will be very Elegant, if placed thus, *Rogo, ut ad me venias*; or thus, *Ad me, ut venias, rogo*; or thus, *Ut ad me venias, rogo*; or thus, *Ad me, rogo, ut venias*. But very Unelegant, if placed thus: *Rogo ut me venias ad*; or, *Rogo ad me venias ut*; or, *Rogo me venias ut ad*; or thus, *Rogo me venias ad ut*; or, *Ut me venias, rogo ad*: or indeed almost, if not altogether, any other way. That the Learner therefore may have some skill in that Art, let the Teacher give him some Rules. And when he hath made his English into plain true Latine, according to the Natural Order, let him then, according to his Rules, transpose and place it in the Artificial Order; and when he hath done, shew it to his Master: who is to shew him where he fails; and to amend what he mistakes in: and this done, let him again transcribe it into his fair Book, and then commit it to memory, as before.

Sed & verborum est structura quædam, quæ duas res efficiens, numerum, & lenitatem. *Cic. de Opt. Gen. Orat.*

For the Ease of the *Teacher*, and Use of the *Learner*, I shall here set down a Collection of Rules for Artificial Ordering and Elegant Placing of Words.

Rules of Placing Words.

And first of the Parts of a Compounded Word. The Parts of a Com- *Rule* 1.

a Compounded Word may be Elegantly divided by some other Word coming betwixt the Parts: as,

Rem verò *publicam* amisimus. Cic.

De *juris* quoque *Consultis*. Suet.

Quod judicium *cunque*. Cic.

Me certè in omnibus rebus *satis* nostræque conjunctioni amicorumque *factarum*——Cic.

Priùs, inquit, *quàm* hoc circulo excedas. Val. Max.

Coturnices *antè* veniunt *quàm* grues. Plin.

Cùm multis annis *post* petiissem, *quàm* Prætores fuissent. Cic.

Per mihi *gratum* erit——Cic. Att. 5. 10.

Cùm tu argento *post* omnia *ponas*. Hor. Sat. 1. 1.

Secondly of Words in a Sentence.

Rule 1. *The Relative, though of the Nom. Case, stands in the beginning of his own Clause.*

1. First, The Words that go together in the Natural Order are parted asunder in the Order Artificial, and the Governed come before those that govern; viz. the Oblique Cases in the beginning, the Verb in the end, and the Nominative Case in the middle betwixt both; as,

Munitissimam hostium civitatem Cæsar occupavit.

Petulanti bonos linguâ consectari desine.

Rule 2.

2. Secondly, The Substantive of the Genitive Case is elegantly set before the Substantive that governs it: as,

Immortalitatis amore *flagravit*. Cic.

Cum ipsius victoriæ conditione *jure omnes victi occidissemus*, mentiæ tuæ judicio *conservati sumus*. Cic.

Rule 3.

3. Thirdly, The Adjective is usually set before the Substantive: as,

Ampla domus dedecori domino sæpe fit. Cic.

Tenacissimi sumus eorum, quæ *rudibus annis* percepimus. Quintil.

Exceptions.

Yet several sorts of Adjectives are sometimes elegantly set after their Substantives.

Except. 1.

(1.) Notes of Universality, whether Affirmative or Negative: as, *omnis*, *nullus*, and *nemo*: as,

Virtutis *laus omnis* in actione consistit. Cic.

Ut ad te scribendi meo arbitratu, *facultas nulla* detur. Cic.

Hujus igitur criminis, te accusante, *mentio nulla* fiet. Cic.

Majus mihi dare *beneficium nullum* potes. Cic.

So *Nemo*.

At verò hujus gloriæ, *C. Cæsar*, quam es paulò antè adeptus, *socium* habes *neminem*. Cic.

Note. Of these *omnis* and *nemo* come elegantly in the end of a Sentence: as, *Ad quam hæc referenda sunt omnia*. Cic. 1. 0 15. *Eâ liberalitate utamur, quæ prosit amicis, nocetat nemini.*

. *Eundem hunc unum ab hostibus metui, præterea neminem.* Cic. ro lege Manil. *Quis legatos unquam audivit sine Senatusconsulto? ntete nemo.* Cic. in Vatin. So *nullus. Grave est hoc crimen in* Verrem: *grave, me agente: te accusante, nullum.* Cic. in Cæ-lium.

(2.) Cardinal Numerals: as, *Except.* 2.

Dies circiter *quindecim* iter fecerunt. Cæs.

Ad hominum *millia decem* undique coegit. Cæs.

Omnes omnium charitates *patria una* complexa est. Cic.

(3.) Comparatives and Superlatives, which in the end of a Sentence many times stand very gracefully: as, *Except.* 3.

Nihil illo regno *spoliatius, nihil* rege *egentius.* Cic.

Fierique studebam ejus prudentia doctior. Cic.

Imperatorem liberalissimum, ætatem opportunissimam, commenda-tionem certè *singularem* habes. Cic.

Hesterno die præmia legatis Allobrogum, Titoque Vulturcio dedistis amplissima. Cic. Cat. 4.

Hanc ego subtilitatem, philosophia quidem dignissimam judico, sed ab eorum causâ, qui ita disserunt, remotissimam. Cic. Ac. 4. 14.

(4.) Pronominals: as, *Except.* 4.

Ardeo cupiditate incredibili, neque ut ego arbitror reprehen-dendâ, *nomen* ut *nostrum scriptis* illustretur & celebretur *tuis.* Cic

Sunt *ingeniis nostris* semina innata virtutum. Cic.

(5.) Adjectives of two Syllables, if their Substantives be of more Syllables: as, *Except.* 5.

Quis *animo æquo* videt eum, quem impurè ac flagitiosè putet vivere? Cic.

Quæ res habet *inflationem magnam.* Cic.

4. Fourthly, Betwixt the Adjective and the Substantive se-veral things are elegantly inserted. *Rule* 4.

(1.) If the Substantive and Adjective be of the Genitive Case, then the former Substantive will come elegantly between them: as, *Sect.* 1.

Quid credas aliud, quàm *divinæ* partem *mentis* his inesse? *Quint. de Apib.*

Cæsareæ clementia *Majestatis* pacem & tranquillitatem Provin-ciis dedit.

Philosophia *omnium* mater *Artium*——Cic.

(2.) If the Substantive and Adjective be not of the Genitive Case, then the Substantive of the Genitive Case will come ele-gantly betwixt them: as, *Sect.* 2.

Hæc est *vera* justitiæ *laus*———

Ob *inclytam* viri *religionem.* Flor.

(3.) If the Substantive be governed of any Preposition, the Preposition will come elegantly between the Substantive and the Adjective: as, *Sect.* 3.

Certâ de *causâ* nondum adducor ut faciam Cic Hoc

Hoc assequêre, ut *quam* in *partem* accipias minus laborem.

Ei *nullâ* in *re* defuit. Cic.

Quam ob *rem* venerim, dicam. Plaut.

Sect. 4. (4.) If the Substantive be not governed of any Preposi yet a Preposition with his Casual word, may elegantly come tween the Adjective and his Substantive: as,

Cæsa ad virum *matrona* parendo imperat. Publ.

Sect. 5. (5.) Between the Adjective and the Substantive, may eleg ly be set not only Nouns, and Prepositions alone, or with Cases; but single words of any sort almost: as,

Pronoun. *Quamcunque* ei *fidem* dederis, præstabo. Cic.

Queruntur *accusatores* se *idoneos* non habere. Cic.

Ego post *supplicationes* mihi *decretas* in *Dalmatiam* proi sum. Cic.

Subcisiva quædam *tempora* incurrunt, quæ ego perire n tior. Cic.

Verb. Hoc affirmo, & hoc *pace* dicam *tuâ*. Cic.

Adverb. *Maximam* verò *partem* quasi suo jure fortun vendicat. Cic.

Neque *ulla* unquam *ætas* de tuis laudibus conticescet. Cic

Preposition. *Quo* in *negotio* tamen *illa* me *res*, Judices, solatur. Cic.

Yea Clauses: as, *Magnum* profectò *laborem Cæsar* assu quem fermè ab *ipsis* ad nos venisse *Gadibus* aiunt, ut *hostes* sue dem *Majestati rebelles*, *nostris* autem supra modum *rebus* inf armis subigeret. *Quam* ob *causam perpetuam* illi *amorem* & gra debemus *immortalem*.

Note. Note. If any thing come between the Substantive and the jective, then may either indifferently be set before other.

Rule 5. 5. Fifthly, The Relative *qui* is elegantly set before the exp sed Substantive, to which it refers, especially if any other w come between: as,

Quem cum isto *sermonem* habueris, procul stans accepi.

Propter eum, *quem* sibi ipse finxerat, *principatum*. Cic.

Note. Note. If *qui* in one clause of a Sentence answer to *hic*, *is*, *idem* in another clause; that clause in which *qui* is, will elegantly come first.

Quem puerum vidisti formosum, *hunc* vides deformem in nectâ. Varro.

Qui semel verecundiæ fines transierit; *eum* bene & gnav oportet esse impudentem. Cic.

Qui dolet rebus alicujus adversis, *idem* alicujus etiam secun dolet. Cic.

Quas enim copias his suppeditari æquius est, *eas* transferunt allenos. Cic.

Rule 6. 6. Sixthly, A Pronoun Primitive comes elegantly between

Pronou

Pronoun Poſſeſſive, and the Subſtantive that it agrees with: as,
Familiaritas mihi *tua* non injucunda eſt.
Tuo tibi *judicio* eſt utendum. Cic.
Arguitur *domi* te *tuæ* interficere voluiſſe. Cic.
Gravi teſte privatus ſum *amoris ſummi* erga te *mei*. Cic.
Suum ſe *negotium* agere dicunt. Cic.

Rule 7. 7. Seventhly, The Pronoun *ipſe* being to be ſet after any Pronoun Primitive in an Oblique Caſe, may elegantly come either before, or after it, in the Nominative Caſe: as,
Qui *ipſe ſibi* ſapiens prodeſſe nequit, nequicquam ſapit. Cic.
Odi ſapientem qui *ſibi ipſe* ſapiens non eſt. Cic.
Hæc ſcripſi; non ut de *me ipſe* dicerem, ſed ut——Cic.
Non egeo medicina, *me ipſe* conſolor. Cic.
Tibi unum timendum ſit, ne *ipſe tibi* defuiſſe videare. Cic.
Qui me violare volent, *ſe ipſi* judicabunt. Cic.
Æquitas enim lucet *ipſa* per *ſe*. Cic.
Per *me ipſe* de te cogitabam. Cic. Att 5. 10.
Animus à *ſe ipſe* diffidens. Cic. Fin. 1. 18.

Rule 8. 8. Eighthly, Prepoſitions moſtly come before their caſual words: as,
Illa præſidia, quæ *pro templis* omnibus cernitis. Cic.
Quâ *in vitâ* tantum abeſt ut voluptates ſectentur, etiam curas, ſollicitudines, vigilias perferunt. Cic.
Ego ipſi, quòd *de ſuâ ſententiâ* deceſſerit, pœnitendum puto. Cic.
Accepi *à te* literas, quibus videris vereri, ut epiſtolas illas acceperim. Cic.

Except. Yet ſome Prepoſitions are not unelegantly ſet after their Caſe, not only in *Poets*, but *Orators*: as,
Senatus, *quos ad* ſolerer, referendum cenſuit. Cic.
Neminem poſſe dare alteri matrimonium, niſi *quem penes* ſit patrimonium. Quintil.
Cordi mihi fuit, priuſquam ad te irem, quærere explorareque, quonam modo veteres noſtri particulâ iſta, *quâ de* agitur, uſi ſunt. A. Gell.
Quos adverſum multi ex *Bithyniâ* volentes occurrêre falſum filium arguituri——Sal.
Quæ ſi *quos inter* ſocietas aut eſt, aut fuit, aut futura eſt eorum eſt habendus ad ſummum naturæ bonum optimus beatiſſimuſque comitatus. Cic.
Conſequeris tamen, ut eos ipſos, *quos contra* ſtatuas æquos placatoſque dimittas. Cic *Quos contra* diſputant. Cic.
Perturbari animos neceſſe eſſe dicunt, ſed adhibent modum, *quem ultra* progredi non oporteat. Cic.
Quem locum *Ægyptum verſus* finem imperii habuere *Carthaginienſes*. Sal.

Poſtula-

Postulavit ut aliquem populus daret, *quicum* communicare Cic.

Qu. Suffidium, quocum mihi omnes necessitudines sunt, diligentius commendo. Cic.

Note 1. 1. Note, *Cum* is always set after *me, te, se, nobis,* and *vobis* and *tenus* after his Casual word.

Note 2. 2. And between the Preposition and his Case may other words be elegantly set, especially the Genitive Case governed of that Substantive, which the Preposition comes before: as,

Per ego te *Deos* oro, ut ne illis animum inducas credere. Ter.

Ex animi *sententiâ*. Ter.

Pro rerum *magnitudine*. Cic.

Rule 9. 9. Ninthly, Betwixt the Participle and that Person of the Verb *Sum*, whereof the Preterperfect Tense of a Verb Passive or Deponent is made up, there may some word be elegantly placed: as,

Diu *fum* equidem *reluctatus*.

Decretum à Senatu *est*.

Fructum *est* amplissimum *consecutus*. Cic.

Hujus gloriæ, quam *es* paulò antè *adeptus*, socium habes neminem. Cic.

Rule 10. 10. Tenthly, The Vocative Case; the Verbs *inquit* and *ait*, and the Particles *enim, autem,* and *verò* have usually some words placed in the beginning of a sentence before them: as,

Quanquam te *Marce fili*, annum jam audientem *Cratippum*, decet que *Athenis*, oportet——Cic.

Ennio delector, *ait*,——Cic.

Quàm, *inquit*, vellem nescire literas. Suet. Ner. c. 10.

Nec *enim* is es quem forma ista declarat. Cic.

Inanimatum est *enim* omne, quod impulsu agitur externo. Cic.

Erat *autem* difficile rem tantam inchoatam relinquere. Cic.

In quo *autem* desiderare te significabis. Cic.

Illæ *verò* virtutes virum bonum videntur potius attingere. Cic.

Rule 11. 11. Eleventhly, Words of Near and of Contrary signification are elegantly placed together in a sentence: as,

Res mihi *invisæ visæ* sunt.

Eveniunt *digna dignis*. Sal.

Doctus indocto quid præstat? quod *cæco videns*. Plaut.

Maximis minima conferam. Cic.

Casta ad virum matrona *parendo imperat*. Publ.

Per dexteram te istam oro, quam regi Deiotaro, *hospes hospiti* porrexisti. Cic.

Fit in *dominatu servitus*, in *servitute dominatus*. Cic.

Quoad eius præstabat judicio *dissimilitudini similitudo*. Cic.

Amor jubet me o *obedientem me* esse servo liberum. Plaut.

Rule 12. 12. Twelfthly, In a Construxture of things related each to

If the *Speech* be Negative, then obſerve to ſet the Negative Particles before the Verb. XI.

The *Negative Particle* uſually comes betwixt the Verb and the Sign of the Verb, if any Sign of the Verb be expreſſed. As, *I do not perceive, what your intent is.* But if no Sign of the Verb be expreſſed, then it comes after the Verb: as, *I perceive not, what your intent is*; *Ego, quid agas, nihil intelligo.*

Interrogative Speeches have the ſame Obſervations moſtly that XII. are in *Aſſertive* Speeches. The Interrogative Pronominal Particles being Nominative Caſes to Verbs, and being governed of a Prepoſition before them, or elſe of a Verb, or ſome other word coming after them. As, *Quis enim erat, qui non ſciret? Quid hoc impudentius dici, aut fingi poteſt? Quæ civitati facta eſt injuria? Quantus fluctus excitari concionum videtis? Cui quæſo tandem profuit? Cui novæ calamitati locus ullus relictus eſſet.*

In *Admirative* or *Exclamative* Speeches, Caſual words are put XIII. into divers Caſes, without any Verb expreſſed to govern them in ſuch Caſe by vertue of the Particle of *Admiring*, or *Exclaiming*, accordingly as we hath ſubjoyned ſuch and ſuch Caſes unto ſuch and ſuch Particles, or as that Verb governs, which is underſtood together with the Verb.

Of the Ablative abſolute.

When a Subſtantive comes together with a Participle (expreſſed or underſtood) in the ſame Clauſe, and neither is the Nominative Caſe to any following Verb, nor hath before it any other word of which it is governed, then it is put *Abſolute*, and ſo is to be made by the *Ablative Caſe*. As, *The King coming, the enemies fled*; *Rege veniente hoſtes fugerunt.* XIV.

Note. If any other Nominative Caſe, though but of a Pronoun, come between the Subſtantive that hath the Participle joyned to it, and the Verb, then that Subſtantive is not the Nominative Caſe to the Verb. But if no Nominative Caſe come betwixt, then it is (not put abſolute, but) the Nominative Caſe to the Verb. As, *The King coming, made the enemies flye*; *Rex veniens hoſtes fugavit.*

In ſpeaking of this Ablative Caſe I follow the received way; not being ignorant what is thought by Learned Perſons of that Conſtruction; namely, that it is governed of ſome Prepoſition underſtood, viz. *à, ab, ſub, cum*, or *in*. See *Treat.* of *Engl. Par.* 20. *v.* 1. *n.* 3.

Well now, when the Learner is able, what by his own ſtudy, and what by theſe Directions, and what by his Teachers further Inſtruction, where it is needful, to read the Engliſh into Latine *viva voce*, then let him go, and write it down in a looſe Paper, and bring it to his Teacher, to conſider of his manner of *writing*,

Postulavit ut aliquem populus daret, *quicum* communicare Cic.

Qu. Suffidium, quocum mihi omnes necessitudines sunt, diligentius commendo. Cic.

Note 1. 1. Note, *Cum* is always set after *me, te, se, nobis*, and *vobis* and *tenus* after his Casual word.

Note 2. 2. And between the Preposition and his Case may other words be elegantly set, especially the Genitive Case governed of that Substantive, which the Preposition comes before: as,

Per ego te *Deos* oro, ut ne illis animum inducas credere. Ter.

Ex animi *sententiâ*. Ter.

Pro rerum *magnitudine*. Cic.

Rule 9. 9. Ninthly, Betwixt the Participle and that Person of the Verb *Sum*, whereof the Preterperfect Tense of a Verb Passive or Deponent is made up, there may some word be elegantly placed: as,

Diu *sum* equidem *reluctatus*.

Decretum à Senatu *est*.

Fructum *est* amplissimum *consecutus*. Cic.

Hujus gloriæ, quam *es* paulò antè *adeptus*, socium habes neminem. Cic.

Rule 10. 10. Tenthly, The Vocative Case; the Verbs *inquit* and *ait*, and the Particles *enim, autem*, and *verò* have usually some word placed in the beginning of a sentence before them: as,

Quanquam te *Marce fili*, annum jam audientem *Cratippum*, hortari que *Athenis*, oportet——Cic.

Ennio delector, *ait*,——Cic.

Quàm, *inquit*, vellem nescire literas. Suet. Ner. c. 10.

Nec *enim* is es quem forma ista declarat. Cic.

Inanimatum est *enim* omne, quod impulsu agitur externo. Cic.

Erat *autem* difficile rem tantam inchoatam relinquere. Cic.

In quo *autem* desiderare te significabis. Cic.

Illæ *verò* virtutes virum bonum videntur potius attingere. Cic.

Rule 11. 11. Eleventhly, Words of Near and of Contrary signification are elegantly placed together in a sentence: as,

Res mihi *invisæ visæ* sunt.

Eveniunt *digna dignis*. Sal.

Doctus indocto quid præstat? quod *cæco videns*. Plaut.

Maximis minima conferam. Cic.

Casta ad virum matrona *parendo imperat*. Publ.

Per dexteram te istam oro, quam regi Deiotaro, *hospes hospiti* porrexisti. Cic.

Fit in *dominatu servitus*, in *servitute dominatus*. Cic.

Quoad eius præstabat judicio *dissimilitudini similitudo*. Cic.

Amor jubet me *obedientem me* esse servo liberum. Plaut.

Rule 12. 12. Twelfthly, In a Construction of things related each to

If the Speech be Negative, then observe to set the Negative particles before the Verb. XI.

The *Negative Particle* usually comes betwixt the Verb and the Sign of the Verb, if any Sign of the Verb be expressed. As, *I do not perceive, what your intent is.* But if no Sign of the Verb be expressed, then it comes after the Verb: as, *I perceive not, what your intent is*; *Ego, quid agas, nihil intelligo.*

Interrogative Speeches have the same Observations mostly that XII. in *Assertive* Speeches. The Interrogative Pronominal Particles being Nominative Cases to Verbs, and being governed of a Preposition before them, or else of a Verb, or some other word coming after them. As, *Quis enim erat, qui non sciret? Quid hoc impudentius dici, aut fingi potest? Quæ civitati facta est injuria? Quantus fluctus excitari concionum videtis? Cui quæso tandem profuit? Cui novæ calamitati locus ullus relictus esset.*

In *Admirative* or *Exclamative* Speeches, Casual words are put XIII. into divers Cases, without any Verb expressed to govern them in such Case by vertue of the Particle of *Admiring*, or *Exclaiming*, accordingly as we hath subjoyned such and such Cases unto such and such Particles, or as that Verb governs, which is understood together with the Verb.

Of the Ablative absolute.

When a Substantive comes together with a Participle (expressed or understood) in the same Clause, and neither is the Nominative Case to any following Verb, nor hath before it any other word of which it is governed, then it is put *Absolute*, and so is to be made by the *Ablative Case*. As, *The King coming, the enemies fled*; *Rege veniente hostes fugerunt.* XIV.

Note. If any other Nominative Case, though but of a Pronoun, come between the Substantive that hath the Participle joyned to it, and the Verb, then that Substantive is not the Nominative Case to the Verb. But if no Nominative Case come betwixt, then it is (not put absolute, but) the Nominative Case to the Verb. As, *The King coming, made the enemies flye*; *Rex veniens hostes fugavit.*

In speaking of this Ablative Case I follow the received way; not being ignorant what is thought by Learned Persons of that Construction; namely, that it is governed of some Preposition understood, viz. *à, ab, sub, cum*, or *in*. See *Treat.* of *Engl. Par.* [illegible] *n.* 3.

Well now, when the Learner is able, what by his own study, and what by these Directions, and what by his Teachers further Instruction, where it is needful, to read the English into Latine *viva voce*, then let him go, and write it down in a loose Paper, and bring it to his Teacher, to consider of his manner of *writing*,

Poſtulavit ut aliquem populus daret, *quicum* communicaret Cic.

Qu. Suffidium, quocum mihi omnes neceſſitudines ſunt, diligentius commendo. Cic.

Note 1. 1. Note, *Cum* is always ſet after *me, te, ſe, nobis,* and *vobis,* and *tenus* after his Caſual word.

Note 2. 2. And between the Prepoſition and his Caſe may other words be elegantly ſet, eſpecially the Genitive Caſe governed of that Subſtantive, which the Prepoſition comes before: as,

Per ego te *Deos* oro, ut ne illis animum inducas credere. Ter.

Ex animi *ſententiâ.* Ter.

Pro rerum *magnitudine.* Cic.

Rule 9. 9. Ninthly, Betwixt the Participle and that Perſon of the Verb *Sum,* whereof the Preterperfect Tenſe of a Verb Paſſive or Deponent is made up, there may ſome word be elegantly placed: as,

Diu *ſum* equidem *reluctatus.*

Decretum à Senatu *eſt.*

Fructum *eſt* ampliſſimum *conſecutus.* Cic.

Hujus gloriæ, quam *es* paulò antè *adeptus,* ſocium habes neminem. Cic.

Rule 10. 10. Tenthly, The Vocative Caſe; the Verbs *inquit* and *ait,* and the Particles *enim, autem,* and *verò* have uſually ſometimes placed in the beginning of a ſentence before them: as,

Quanquam te *Marce fili,* annum jam audientem *Cratippum,* ibique *Athenis,* oportet——Cic.

Ennio delector, *ait,*——Cic.

Quàm, *inquit,* vellem neſcire literas. Suet. Ner. c. 10.

Nec *enim* is es quem forma iſta declarat. Cic.

Inanimatum eſt *enim* omne, quod impulſu agitur externo. Cic.

Erat *autem* difficile rem tantam inchoatam relinquere. Cic.

In quo *autem* deſiderare te ſignificabis. Cic.

Illæ *verò* virtutes virum bonum videntur potius attingere. Cic.

Rule 11. 11. Eleventhly, Words of Near and of Contrary ſignification are elegantly placed together in a ſentence: as,

Res mihi *inviſæ viſæ* ſunt.

Eveniunt *digna dignis.* Sal.

Doctus indocto quid præſtat? quod *cæco videns.* Plaut.

Maximis minima conferam. Cic.

Caſta ad virum matrona *parendo imperat.* Publ.

Per dexteram te iſtam oro, quam regi Deiotaro, *hoſpes hoſpiti* porrexiſti. Cic.

Fit in *dominatu ſervitus,* in *ſervitute dominatus.* Cic.

Quoad eius præſtabat judicio *diſſimilitudini ſimilitudo.* Cic.

Amor jubet me *o obedientem me* eſſe ſervo liberum. Plaut.

Rule 12. 12. Twelfthly, In a Contexture of things related each to

ther what is the more worthy, or before the other in nature, is elegantly placed formoſt in order: Viz. Agent before Patient, *&c.* as;

Non *ego eum* cum ſummis viris comparo—Cic.
Roga ipſum quemadmodum *ego eum* Arimini acceperim. Cic.
Mors in claris *viris* & *fœminis* dux in cœlum ſolet eſſe. Cic.
Dies, noctesque torqueor. Cic. Tu, ſi *dies noctesque* memineris. Cic. Fam. 11. 5.

13. Thirteenthly, In *Extenuating*, the more weighty things ought to go before the leſs or lighter: as, *Rule* 13.

Nulla *crux* ibi fuit, nulla *nex*, nulla *verberatio*, imo ne *cuſtodia* quidem.

But in *Aggravating*, the more weighty things ought to follow the leſs or lighter: as,

Civem Romanum *vincire*, *verberare*, in crucem *tollere*.

14. Fourteenthly, In the placing of words, avoid all ſuch ſetting of them, as may beget *Obſcurity*, *Ambiguity*, or *Ill ſound*. *Rule* 14.

(1.) *Obſcurity*, as in that Sentence.

Fuit in hâc virtus iſta quondam republicâ, for
Fuit iſta quondam in hâc republicâ virtus. Cic.

(2.) *Ambiguity*; as in thoſe { *Da temetum* / *Date metum* }: which becauſe they may be miſtaken either for other; therefore it is better to ſay *Temetum da*; or *Metum date*. So rather ſay *Atria ſumma*, than *Summa atria*, becauſe this laſt way the words may be miſtaken for *Summa tria*, or *Sumatria*, an Iſle. Rather ſay *Stivine ego*, than *egone ſeivi*: becauſe this laſt may be miſtaken for *ego neſcivi*.

(3.) *Ill ſound* either ——

1. By the meeting together of many either *Vowels*; as, *Poſtea id itum eſt*, for which rather ſay *eo poſt itum eſt*: or harſh *Conſonants*; as, *Ingens ſtrepitus*; for which rather ſay *ſtrepitus ingens*. So, *Si puer ingenio eo eſſet*: for which rather ſay *eo ſi puer eſſet ingenio, quo eſſe dicitur*, &c.

2. By the coming together of many either *Monoſyllables*; as, *Colloquutus ſum cum illo*; for which rather ſay *Colloquutus cum illo ſum*. Or words of many ſyllables of like ſound; as, *Harum ſcribendarum literarum occaſio hæc eſt*; for which rather ſay, *Harum ſcribendi literarum hæc occaſio eſt*. So, with *Cicero*, *Eorum inſignia deorum*, than *eorum deorum*, or *deorum eorum inſignia*.

A prudent intermixture of words long and ſhort, of like and of different ſound, beginning and ending interchangeably with Vowels and Conſonants, is the one remedy of theſe faults.

The greateſt care for the well running of words, is to be had in the beginning and end, eſpecially in the four or five laſt Syllables.

Thoſe Sentences are thought to be cloſed ſweetly, that en in words of like Syllables with theſe; *videatur*; *cariorem*; *parabat*; *tuum*; *Cœpiſſe*; *tribueretur*; *miſerim*; *conſervâſſem*: or an Tenſe of *Sum* after a Participle of the Præter Tenſe, or Futu in *dus*: as,

Vĭdĕātŭr] *Ut hæc à virtute donata, cætera à virtute commoda eſſe videantur.* Cic.

Cārĭōrĕm] *Neque ulla unquam ætas de tuis laudibus conticie* Cic. —*Ut eos ſæpe, quos nunquam vidimus, diligamus.*

Părābat] *Et ſi eſſet aliquis, ejus certè non eſſet, qui in eadem ca ſa & fortuna fuiſſet.* Cic.

Tŭŭm]—*Qua qui apud te, Cæſar, utetur, ſuam citiùs abjicia humanitatem, quam extorquebit tuam.* Cic. *Et quicquid eſt profe geſtum, id penè omne ducit ſuum.* Cic.

Cŭpīſſĕ] *Semperque immortalitatis amore flagravit.* Cic.

Tribŭĕrētŭr]—*Multaque uterque dux faceret armatus, quæ ill togatus fieri prohibuiſſet.* Cic.

Mīsĕrīm] *Hæc qui faciat, non ego eum cum ſummis viris co paro, ſed ſimillimum Deo judico.* Cic. *Ut quantùm operibus tu diuturnitas detrahet, tantum afferat laudibus.* Cic.

Cōnsĕrvāſſĕm]—*Si quunquam alium provinciæ præfeciſſet.* Cic *Te verò*——*quibus laudibus efferemus? quibus ſtudiis proſequemur quâ benevolentiâ complectemur?* Cic.

tus ſum]—*Ut nemo mirari debeat, humana conſilia divina ne ceſſitate eſſe ſuperata.* Cic. *Et hoc pace dicam tuâ, nullam in hi laudem ampliorem, quam eam, quam hodierno die conſecutus es.* Cic

dus ſum] *Cum omnibus civibus, tum maximè nobis, qui ætern ſervati ſumus, providenda eſt.* Cic.

To which may be added Sentences ending in theſe or the like words, or feet.

Rĕmīsīſtī] *Ipſam victoriam viciſſe videris, cum ea ipſa, qu illa erat adepta, victis remiſiſti.* Cic.

Irātŭs] —*Cum pacis autores conſervandos ſtatim cenſuerit, cæt ris fuerit iratior.* Cic. *Nimis iracundam fuiſſe victoriam.* Cic *Doleoque, cum reſp. immortalis eſſe debeat, eam in unius mortalis o nimo conſiſtere.* Cic.

Rĕlīnquēmŭs] *Parumne igitur, inquies, gloriam magnam relin quemus?* Cic.

Cōnsĭlĭī] —*Ut illud fati fuiſſe videatur, hoc conſilii.* Cic.

Rĕpŭdĭārī] —*Non modo pacem, ſed orationem etiam civium pa cem efflagitantium repudiari.* Cic.

Vŏlūntārĭŭm]—*Prudens & ſciens, tanquam ad interitum vo luntarium.* Cic.

Extĭmēſcēntēm]——*Tum etiam ipſius victoriæ ferocitatem extĭ meſcentem.* Cic.

Dīlĭgēntĭam]—*Simul enim augebimus & diligentiam.* Cic.

——*Quam*

——*Quam ipsa æternitas semper intuebitur.* Cic.

Diffidēbāmus] *Non enim consiliis solum & studiis, sed armis etiam & castris diffidebamus.* Cic.

But in these things liberty is very great, *all things being to be measured by the ear*; in the judgment of which, if a Sentence sound well, it matters not much what Syllables it consists of.

Thirdly, Of Clauses in a Period.

As *Words* and *Phrases* in a simple Sentence, so the several *Clauses* of a compounded Sentence, may be placed with more or lesse Elegancy: touching which, the only Rule is, That the more frequent the Transposition is, the more Elegant is the Sentence, so no disorder or obscurity follow thereon: as for Example.

Sed & sententiæ suæ am compositionem habent, & ad probandam rem accommodatum ordinem. *Cic. de Opt. Gen. Orat.*

Nihil allatum est, ne rumoris quidem.
Nihil, ne rumoris quidem allatum est.

Si à nobis deficis, molestè fero.
Molestè fero, si à nobis deficis.
Molestè, si à nobis deficis, fero.

Rogo, ut ad me venias.
Ut ad me venias, rogo.
Ad me ut venias, rogo.
Ad me, rogo, ut venias.

Gratum est mihi, quod ad me scribis.
Quod ad me scribis, gratum mihi est.
Mihi, quod ad me scribis, gratum est.

The main thing here to be avoided is the *Hyperbaton*, or confused intermixture of Words, belonging to one Clause with the words that belong to another. which either alters the Sense, or renders the Sentence extreamly difficult: as if one should say,

Quem cum isto sermonem audivi, habuisti; for
Quem cum isto habuisti sermonem, audivi.

Is amicior mihi vivit, atque nullus est; for
Amicior mihi nullus vivit, atque is est; or
Nullus mihi amicior atque is est, vivit.

Sunt oculos clari, qui cernis sydera tanquam; for
Cernis oculos, qui clari sunt tanquam sydera.

Penè macros arsit, dum turdos versat in igne; for
Penè arsit, dum macros in igne turdos versat.

And these few Rules or Observations may suffice to be instilled

into a Learner, till Time and Reading do perfect his Style. He that would see more Observations of this Nature, may consult Mr. *Brinsley*'s *Gram. School.* ch. 11. Mr. *Clark*'s *Dux Grammaticus*, p. 267. and *Formulæ Oratoriæ*, pag. 335. *Edit. anno* 1649. * But especially *Buchler*'s Elegancies; *Franciscus Sylvius*'s *Progymnasmata*; and *Comenius*'s *Ars Oratoria*, five *Grammatica Elegans*, especially ch. 4. The perusal of which Books cannot but be hugely improving to any ingenious Learner, as containing in them a world of the choicest and most elegant passages, that are to be found in the best extant Authors, brought as instances of their Observations, and Examples of their Rules. And thus much touching the *Artificial Ordering* and *Elegant Placing of Words* in Sentences.

* *Horn de Usu Authoris, p.* 29.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Use of Phrases.

IF the *Artificial Ordering* of plain words conduce much to the making of the Learner's Latine good, much more will a handsom contexture of *Elegant Roman Phrases*, or Forms of speaking, used by the best and purest Writers of the Latine Tongue. Of those therefore the Learner is to be exhorted to get into his head what store his memory shall be able to bear; and to be taught how to use them in his own Compositions. For the first of these, the getting of his Memory well stored with Phrases, which is a work of some difficulty, requiring time, and diligence, and observation, the Teacher may be pleased to put his Learner upon some of these or the like practices: As first to have a fair *Paper Book* on purpose to write down Latine Phrases and Elegant Forms of speaking in, as he shall occasionally meet with them in his Lessons; and to write them daily down therein; and give a weekly account of them without Book unto his Master. Next to make an Abstract of all the Forms of speaking, and Phrases contained in *Godwin*'s Latine *Antiquities*, and to repeat them to the Master by heart three or four times over, in parts, by ten, or twenty, or a greater number in a morning, according as his capacity shall be; and then by double that number, and still in larger proportion till all be well imprinted into the memory. Where that they may be the better retained, let the Learner throughly read and digest that Book, till he be so well acquainted with the ground and rise of every Form or Phrase, that he can readily upon hearing the Phrase, give the true account of the rise and occasion thereof. After this to

make

make an Abstract of all the Forms and Phrases contained in that excellent little Book called *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, where are so many excellent Forms and Phrases, as well-nigh comprehend all the Regular Constructions of Grammar, yea and the Figurative ones too: and let them also in the same Method and manner be gotten by heart, and repeated. He may be much improved also in this way by what may be found of this nature in my own *Treatises of English Particles* and *Idioms*. Lastly, the Teacher may make an Abstract of some one Phrase-book of best note and account (such as *Winchesters* Phrases, Mr *Hall's* Phrases, or the like) taking only two or three of the best Phrases of every Head, and give his Scholar that to transcribe and get by heart. These Practices may be some present trouble to the doer: yet done for once, they are done for always; and the benefit is such as will vastly recompense the time and trouble. And because it is my design to save both the Teacher and Learner all the time and labour that I can, therefore having two such Abstracts out of *Godwins Antiquities*, and *Hermes Anglo-Latinus* as I spake of, lying by me many years ago, made for my private use, I have thought good here to communicate them, which I do the more earnestly recommend to use, in regard the *One*, besides the many choice Phrases that it contains, gives a great insight into the *Roman Customs*, especially if recourse be had occasionally unto the Author for the understanding of the Phrases, and so may prove a successful key for the opening of many difficulties in the best of Latine Authors, *Cicero* especially: The *Other*, besides the many *Elegant Idioms* or *Proprieties* of English and Latine that it comprehends, gives a good inlet into the knowledge of the *Ornate Grammatical Construction*, for the most, if not all, of whose Rules it furnishes the Reader with very proper and pertinent Examples.

A Collection of Phrases out of *Hermes Anglo-Latinus.*

I will make thee do it, i. e. *constrain.*	Cogam te hoc facere.
Make [i. e. *turn*] *this into Latine.*	Verte hoc Latiné.
He made [i. e. *feigned*] *as though he wept.*	Simulavit quasi flerer, se flere.
I will make them friends [i. e. *reconcile.*	Redigam eos in gratiam.
I would be loth to make thee be beaten [i. e. *give cause*—	Non lubens committerem, ut vapules.
He makes a mouth [i. e. *writhes.*	Os intorquet.

I will make good [i.e. *fill up or supply.*	Supplebo.
He made much of me.	Comiter me tractavit.
What did you make of this years crop?	Quanti vendidisti istius anni proventum?
Make a Leg.	Flecte poplitem.
Make the Bed.	Sterne lectum.
To make War.	Bellum gerere.
Make haste.	Festina; propera.
To make a Verse.	Carmen componere.
To make Water.	Urinam reddere.
He made a Law.	Legem tulit.
Make ready Supper.	Para; adorna cœnam.
Make a Fire.	Exstrue ignem.
You shall never make me believe this tale.	Nunquam mihi fidem facies hujus fabulæ.
You make a fool of me.	Ludis me; pro ludibrio habes me.
He made him a King.	Regem eum creavit.
He makes a stir about nothing.	Tumultuatur in re nihili.
I will make an end.	Absolvam, finiam, finem faciam.
He being weary lay down, he laid him down when he was weary.	Ille defessus decubuit.
He cracks of his exploits, wealth.	Crepat facinora; divitias.
He saith nothing for fear, he is in such a fear that he is not able to say a word.	Tacet metu.
I bought it for neither more nor less, I paid just so much for it.	Nec pluris, nec minoris emi.
It is I. It was thou.	Ego sum. Tu eras.
It is not thou canst scare me.	Non tu is es qui me terrere potes.
I am sound.	Valeo.
He is pale.	Pallet.
He is palish, or somewhat pale.	Pallidior est.
What is he good for?	Cui rei utilis est?
Who will go with me? I will.	Quis mecum ibit? ego ibo.
My poor help.	Opella mea.
A petty King.	Regulus.
A pedling Poet.	Poetaster.
A little Fellow.	Homunculus.
A poor gain.	Lucellum.
Dear heart.	Corculum.
A small field.	Agellus.
Pretty well; somewhat better.	Meliuscule.
Somewhat fearful.	Timiduliculus; timidior; subtimidus.

A poor pittance.	Particula; portiuncula.
A Brick-wall.	Murus coctilis.
A Summer-Apple.	Præcox pomum.
Houshold-affairs.	Res domesticæ.
An Eye-witness.	Oculatus testis.
In the top of the house.	In summis ædibus.
In the bottom of Hell.	In imo Tartaro.
The furthest part of the world.	Ultima terra.
At the end of the Town.	Ad extremum oppidum.
About the lower end of the side.	Quasi in extrema pagina.
At break of day.	Primâ luce.
The rest of the money.	Reliqua pecunia.
In the midst of the City.	In urbe media.
Born the fourth day of the Moon, in an unluckie hour.	Quartâ Lunâ natus.
I am here that did it.	Adsum qui feci.
This house of yours is like to fall.	Hæc tua domus est ruitura.
This pride of hers will come down.	Ejus superbia detumescet.
Your own Knavery will bewray you.	Tua ipsius nequitia te prodet.
I saw him my self with my own eyes.	Egomet ipse vidi meis ipsius oculis.
They their own selves did it with their own hand.	Illi ipsi fecerunt suâ ipsorum manu.
Thou thy own self.	Tu ipse.
Here is the man his own self.	Adest ipse homo.
He himself, or his own self.	Ille ipse.
I inquired of a friend of mine, and he told me.	Sciscitabar à quodam familiari meo, qui nunciavit mihi.
He hath not whirewithal to buy a halter to hang himself.	Non habet, quo restim emat ad suspendium.
A storm will sink a Ship.	Procella submerget navim.
The Ship sinketh.	Navis subsidit.
Look hither.	Respice huc.
He looks like a sloven.	Videtur sordidus.
It will break before it will bow.	Priùs frangitur, quàm flectitur.
What hast thou been doing?	Quid fecisti?
I have been writing.	Scripsi.
The money is in the coyning.	Argentum cuditur.
Speak out thy words.	Eloquere verba.
I care not for thee.	Nihil moror te.
I will tarry abroad out of doors.	Morabor sub dio.
He is followed by many, overtaken by few,	Multi sequuntur eum, pauci assequuntur.
Winter was well-nigh spent, and the Spring drew on.	Præcipitaverat hyems, & appetebat ver.
Thou art doing, but makest no riddance.	Moves, sed non promoves.

He cannot forbear doing miſchief, ——keep out of ill turns.
A maleficio non temperabit.

He is broken, bankrupt.
Decoxit.

Good luck have the buſineſs, God ſpeed it.
Vertat hæc res bene.

It waxeth night, ripe.
Veſperaſcit, matureſcit.

I am to go away.
Sum abiturus.

He is gone a hunting, to hunt.
Ivit venatum.

Thou haſt no cauſe to complain, ——of complaining.
Nullam habes cauſam querendi.

Very deſirous to go(of going)back.
Cupidiſſimus redeundi.

The greateſt allurement to ſin, is hope of ſparing.
Maxima peccandi illecebra, ipſa eſt impunitatis.

Take time to adviſe.
Sume diem ad deliberandum.

He roſe very early to ſtudy.
Surrexit admodum diluculo ad ſtudendum; ſtudendi gratiâ.

I have my Brother to intreat yet.
Reſtat mihi frater adhuc exorandus.

What doſt thou appoint me to do?
Quid mihi præſcribis faciendum?

I commend my Son to you to be taught.
Commendo tibi filium docendum.

I am come to intreat that I might.
Veni ut rogarem, ut liceret mihi.

I deſire thee to be (or that thou wouldſt be) gone.
Oro te, ut abeas.

I know not what to do.
Neſcio quid faciam.

Send thy man before to inquire.
Præmitte famulum, qui quærat.

Art thou a fit man to teach me?
Tûne es idoneus, qui me doceas?

He gave me a Book to read, but not worth reading, not worthy to be read.
Dedit mihi librum legendum (quem legerem) at indignum qui legatur.

Here is a Pen-knife for you to make a pen withal.
Hem tibi ſcalpellum, quo pennam exacuas.

He was not come back in the morning, but now he is come back.
Manè non redierat, ſed nunc rediit.

Thou art come ſooner than I looked.
Veniſti celeriùs opinione.

I was gone abroad before thou wert up.
Prodieram foras priùs, quàm tu ſurrexeras.

I am undone, if he be gone away.
Si ille abiit, perii.

I am run out of breath.
Cucurri uſque dum fatiſcit ſpiritus.

The Apple is ripe.
Pomum maturuit.

You are a fool to believe——, for believing him.
Stultus es, qui huic credas.

You know what account I make of him.
Scis quanti eum faciam.

About (ready) to fall.
He deserves to be praised.
He should have been punished.
The better Gamester at Dice, the worse man.
They differ but about one thing.
But for this one time.
There is not a day but he cometh to me.
You can relish nothing but roast meat.
What else is it to dance, but to play the fool.
He doth nothing but play.
I sent no Letters but to you.
Nothing but what was well advised went from him.
I cannot but weep.

One by one.
From door to door.
Word for word.
Take heed thou dost it not.
Shalt thou come back.
Thou mayst be gone.
It is above three miles off.

Why rise you not? Rise.
I am sore afraid.
Without pains.
I am obliged, engaged to thee: in your debt.
You can do much with him.

At his Masters beck.
Till broad day-light.
For this cause.
Thou mayst be gone for all me.
Out of gun-shot.
It will not be for thy profit.
Considering his worth, he is not used with respect enough.
According to the sudden accident, as the case stood.
Not amiss.

Ruiturus.
Laudandus est.
Plectendus esset.
Aleator, quanto doctior, tanto nequior.
De unâ solùm re dissident.
Hâc tantùm vice.
Nullus est dies quin (quo non) ad me veniret.
Nihil tibi sapit, præter assa.

Quid aliud est saltare, nisi ineptire?
Nil nisi ludit.
Nullas dedi Literas, præterquam ad te.
Nil nisi consideratum prodibat ex ejus ore.
Non possum non flere; quin fleam.
Sigillatim.
Ostiatim.
Verbatim.
Cave ne feceris.
Fac redeas.
Licet abeas.
Amplius tria millia passuum abest.
Quin surgis?
Admodum timeo.
Citra pulverem.
Sum in tuo ære.

Tu multum, [plurimum] potes apud eum.
Ad domini nutum.
Ad clarum diem.
Hâc de causâ.
Licet abeas per me.
Extra telum, teli jactum.
Non erit ex re tua, in rem tuam.
Pro ejus dignitate minus honorificè tractatur.
E re natâ.

Non abs te.

He is on our side.	A nobis ſtat.
He is one of Plato's *Sect.*	Eſt à *Platone.*
He is the Kings Counſellor.	Regi eſt à conſiliis.
He was thy Footman.	Erat tibi à pedibus.
Before and behind.	A fronte & à tergo.
At ſupper time.	Super [inter] cœnam.
About ten talents.	Ad decem talenta.
Word for word.	Ad verbum ; verbum de verbo.
At my houſe.	Apud me, domi meæ.
In his right mind.	Apud ſe, compos mentis.
It is to be found in Virgil.	Habetur apud *Virgilium.*
In the days of yore, among our Anceſtors.	Apud majores.
In jeſt ; ſport.	Per jocum ; ludum.
For this preſent.	In præſentia ; in præſens ; præſenti.
Every hour.	In horas.
One with another.	Inter ſe.
What imployment is he fit for ?	Quas ad res aptus eſt ?
Here's a pen for thee to write with.	Hem tibi pennam quâ ſcribas.
This is the man I told you of.	Hic eſt de quo locutus ſum tibi.
You ſhould have told me this before.	Debuiſti prædicere.
Lay the burden upon me.	Impone mihi hoc onus.
I will go preſently to the man.	Illico adibo hominem.
He goes to bed ſupperleſs, without his ſupper.	It cubitum incœnatus.
Shew thy ſelf a man.	Præſta te virum.
He will prove a Scholar.	Evadet doctus.
He is held an excellent Divine.	Theologiæ peritiſſimus habetur.
He is reported to be (hath the report of) a ſpend-thrift.	Audit Nepos.
I had rather go on foot, than on horſe-back.	Mallem ire pedes, quàm equo.
He is ſick of a quartan (feaver.)	Laborat quartanâ, ſc. febre.
To give him a Civick Crown.	Donare civica, ſc. coronâ.
To pour on cold water.	Frigidam ſuffundere, ſc. aquam.
To hold the firſt parts, to be the chief.	Primas tenere, ſc. partes.
Which way ? that way.	Quâ ? illâc, ſc. viâ.
At my charge.	De meo, ſc. ære, vel ſumptu.
There is a thing that I would tell thee.	Eſt quod tibi indicarem.
There are ſome that ſay ſo.	Sunt qui affirmant.
There is a thing that troubles me.	Eſt quod me malè habet.
There is no room for me to ſit.	Non eſt ubi ſedeam.

have cause to be glad.	Est quod gaudeas.
are most desirous of those things that are most hurtful to us.	Quæ maximè nobis nocent, ea maximè appetimus.
will not hinder you from studying.	Per me non stabit quo minùs studeas.
...ing hindred you from writing.	Nihil obstitit quo minùs scriberes.
...nesses hindred me from writing.	Negotia me impedierunt quo minùs scriberem.
...at trade are you of?	Quam artem factitas?
...your hook be always hanging.	Semper tibi pendeat hamus.
...y were two days journey off.	Aberant bidui, sc. viam.
...at's the matter?	Quid rei est?
...see what a kind of man he is.	Vides quid sit hominis.
...any matter of money remain.	Si quid nummorum erit reliquum.
...ent not a wenching at that age, at those years.	Ego istuc ætatis non amori operam dabam.
...poor deal of wine.	Minimum vini.
...this time of the day.	Hoc diei.
...at sickness is this?	Quid hoc morbi est?
...much money, so much credit.	Quantum pecuniæ, tantum fidei.
...is poor piece of a letter.	Hoc literularum.
...way is much of the same length.	Tantundem viæ est.
...hath just his Masters conditions.	Domini est simillimus.
...is not able to pay.	Non est solvendo, *sub.* idoneus.
...y carry things fit to put out the fire.	Ea portant, quæ restinguendo igni forent, sc. idonea.
...endureth cold the best of any man living.	Est omnium qui vivunt, algoris patientissimus.
...am the nearest to you of any man.	Tibi me propior nemo est.
...k his advice about this.	Consule illum hoc.
...can eat Beef heartily.	Vescor bubulâ lubentissimè, sc. carne.
...will take the same course that thou dost.	Eodem tecum utar consilio.
...imitate } thee.	Æmulor { te.
...envy } thee.	Æmulor { tibi.
...o man understands me.	Non intelligor ulli.
Cicero salutes you.	Salvebis à *Cicerone.*
I shall beware of him that he hurt me not.	Cavebo ab illo ne mihi noceat.
He is in a gross errour.	Errorem erravit spissum.
You will be heartily glad.	Solidum gaudebis gaudium.

What

what pranks would he play ?	Quos ludos luderet ?
This is a secret to us, we are ignorant of it.	Hoc nos latet.
He came to the relief of the Townsmen.	Oppidanis suppetias venit.
It casts an ugly smell.	Tetrum odorem spirat.
What hadst thou to supper ?	Quid cœnasti ?
They know not the way.	Semitam non sapiunt.
It smells of Saffron.	Olet crocum.
I am sorry for you.	Doleo tuam vicem.
I deny it.	Eo inficias.
The day will fail me.	Deficiet me dies.
You are sure to be punisht.	Pœna vos manet.
To die.	Mortem occumbere.
Hands off, forbear.	Abstine manum.
I wrastle with, out of troubles.	Eluctor difficultates.
I mind only this, this is all I mind.	Studeo hoc unum, in hoc unum.
To quicken his speed, flight.	Celerare fugam.
He is seven years old.	Est annorum septem.
It is for { *Subjects to obey.* / *Kings to command.*	Est { Subditi parere. / Regis imperare. } sc. cum.
It came into my mind, head.	Venit mihi in mentem.
He studies Physick.	Studet Medicinæ.
There is room for you.	Locus vacat tibi.
He minds Philosophy.	Vacat Philosophiæ.
Be ruled by me.	Auscultа mihi.
What troubles you ?	Quid tibi dolet ?
I yield to thee.	Accedo tibi.
Come into the house.	Succede ædibus.
I was by when he preached,—present at the Sermon.	Interfui concioni.
I had a mind, desire.	Incessit mihi cupiditas.
I am not in fault.	Vaco culpâ.
He is convicted of theft.	Tenetur furti.
To condemn to death.	Damnare capitis.
He sued him in an Action of Trespass.	Egit injuriarum cum illo.
To accuse of Treason.	Læsæ majestatis arcessere ; simulare.
He is accused of Bribery.	Postulatur de repetundis, sc. pecuniis.
He accuseth him of a crime.	Arguit } eum crimine. / Arcessit }
He set fire on the house, the house on fire.	Injecit ignem ædibus.
I bought this for you.	Hoc mercatus sum tibi.

n pen to paper.
n deceived, conſened me, put a trick upon me.
e committed this to my truſt.
e forbad me his houſe, —diſcharged me of his houſe.
I have nothing to do with your friendſhip ; entertainment ; giſt, &c.
will take a courſe, provide for thee.
promiſe thee this.
ſwer me this.
e will not let me have my Book.
will put thee by all thy ſhifts.

gave me a box on the ear.
rgive me this fault.
t you command me any ſervice?
ppoſe they have no money.
look to that.
d him in mind of his duty.
re warned of many things.
kept theſe things from his father.
treat this of you.
u are aſked their opinion.
ne prevail with you.
has his gown on.
ſful in Greek.
dskilled in Martial Diſcipline.
ſhript him of his goods, of all.
u him loſe, be made to go without his ſupper.
ave wip'd the old man of his money.
is of, has a lowring look.
en he had ſpoken theſe words.
is gone a hunting.
r letting him do as he liſts, makes him grow every day worſe than other.
is baſe a writing.
ave off, leave your prating.
t it a ſunning.
n to write letters.

Imprime pennam chartæ.
Impoſuit mihi.

Credidit hoc meæ fidei.
Interdixit ; prohibuit mihi domum.
Renuncio amicitiæ ; hoſpitio ; muneri, &c.

Proſpiciam ; conſulam ; cavebo tibi.
Hoc tibi recipio.
Hoc mihi reſponde.
Prohibet mihi librum.
Præcludam tibi omnia ſubterfugia.
Impegit mihi colaphum.
Condona mihi hoc delictum.
Ecquid mihi imperabis ?
Suſpicor nihil argenti eſſe illis.
Hoc mihi curæ erit.
Admone illum officii.
Multa admonemur.
Hæc patrem celavit.

Te hoc obſecro.
Rogantur ſententiam.
Sine te exorem.
Indultur togam.
Literas Græcas eruditus.
Edoctus belli artes.
Exuit eum bonis.
Multetur cœna.

Emunxi argento ſenem.

Fronte eſt caperatâ.
His verbis dictis.
Abiit venatum.
Uſq; adeò permittis eum quidvis pro libitu facere, ut quotidie fiat ſeipſo deterior.
Occupatus eſt ſcribendo.
Deſiſte garriendo.
Poſui ad inſolandum.
Scribendæ ſunt mihi literæ.

I muſt write out this Book.
In writing Letters.

I have no leiſure to write a Letter.

I am not at leiſure.
Thou mayſt for all me.
Beſides my purpoſe.
What will become of me?
To ſwear by Jove.
A Child of that age.
Many things of like ſort.
The laſt day of January.
The third day of January.
Hard by.
In ſafety.
In readineſs.
By Sea and Land.
He is of no account with us.
Be of good courage.
A man of great age.
Lame of his feet.
Red-haired.
On that condition.
For thy ſake,
Of a good age.
He is ſick of a diſeaſe; ſeaver; want.
I ſalute you, greet you well.
In confidence of your courteſie.
He is not able to ſpeak for grief.
Of the ſame mould, temper.
To be angry for nothing.
She has had a child by Pamphilus.
You ſhall not buy it but at a dear rate.
You aſk too much for your wares.
You offer a penny for it.
To ſet at nought.
How doſt thou prize this houſe?
Not under ten pounds.

It is not worth ſo much.
One eye-witneſs is worth a thouſand ear-witneſſes.

Exſcribendus eſt mihi hic liber.
In ſcriben- { do literas. / dis literis.
Non eſt mihi otium ſcribendæ epiſtolæ. / di epiſtolam.
No vacat mihi.
Licet tibi per me.
Alienum inſtituris meis.
Quid mihi [de me] fiet?
Jovem jurare (per.
Puer id ætatis (ad.
Id genus multa (ſecundum.
Pridie calendas *Februarii* (ante.
Tertio nonas *Januarii* (ante.
In proximo. (loco.
In tuto. (loco.
In promptu.
Terrâ marique.
Nullo eſt numero apud me.
Bono ſis animo.
Homo provectâ ætate.
Claudus pedibus.
Crine ruber.
Eâ lege (ſub.
Tuâ causâ (pro.
Grandis natu.
Laborat morbo; febri; peripneumoniâ.
Impertio te ſalute.
Fretus tuâ humanitate.
Præ mœrore fari nequit.
De eâdem fidelià.
De nihilo iraſci.
Peperit è *Pamphilo.*
Non parabis niſi immenſo pretio.
Liceris nimio merces.
Licitaris denario.
Pro nihilo putare, ducere.
Quanti indicas has ædes?
Non minoris quàm decem minis.
Non eſt tanti.
Pluris oculatus teſtis unus, quàm mille auriti.

I care not a ſtraw for thee.
Non pili te facio.
I take it in good part.
Boni conſulo.
I weigh it not thus much.
Hujus non pendo.
It weigheth three drams.
Pendet tres drachmas.
Go not a nails breadth from the truth.
Ne tranſverſum unguem diſcedas à recto.
Two days journey off.
Abeſt bidui iter.
Leſs by the half.
Dimidio minor.
A City unguarded.
Urbs præſidio nuda.
To ſtand to the bargain.
Stare pactis.
To rely upon vertue.
Virtute niti.
Well born.
Honeſto loco natus.
Come of a great houſe.
Genere clariſſimo [ſplendidâ familiâ] ortus.
I am a Louth *man, but my Anceſtors were of* Yorkſhire.
Sum *Ludenſis*, at oriundus ex agro *Eboracenſi*.
He went out at three a clock.
Prodiit tertiâ horâ.
Within this two days we ſhall know.
Biduo; intra biduum ſciemus.

In ſleep time.
Per quietem.
To ſleep till broad day.
Stertis ad multum diem.
For this three years full.
Per totum triennium.
By night.
De nocte.
For a year;——month.
In annum;——menſem.
For many years paſt.
Multis retro annis.
At this time of the night.
Hoc noctis.
To ſit up all late at night.
Ad multam noctem.
To ſleep till fair day.
Ad clarum diem dormis.
Eight days hence.
Ad octavum hinc diem.
For the ſpace of ſome years.
Aliquot per annos.
Day after day.
Diem ex die.
Six years ago, ſince.
Ante ſex annos; ſex abhinc annis.

Since when, ſince then.
Ex quo. Ex illo.
It is a twelve-month ſince I ſaw him.
Annus eſt, ex quo eum vidi; quod eum non vidi.
Writing his Author, ſitter on.
Me authore.
He is in Ireland.
In *Hibernia*.
He is at Dublin; Carthage; Venice.
Dublinii; *Carthagine*; *Venetiis*.
He came from about Rome, *from the parts about* Rome.
Venit à *Româ*.

Theſe things were done before or near Ilerda.
Hæc ad *Ilerdam* geruntur.

He departed from before Mutina.
Diſceſſit à *Mutinâ*.
He ſits next Pompey.
Proximè *Pompeium* ſedeo.

I shall rise, be up, get out of bed sooner than I was wont.	Surgam maturiùs solito.
Above half a mile.	Amplius quingentis passibus.
What do you touching of us?	Quid tibi nos est tactio?
To gape after an inheritance.	Inhiare hæreditatem.
I had a desire, mind.	Incessit me cupido.
I know not which way to take.	Nescio quam viam insistam.
I will give over my enterprise.	Desistam incœpto.
I forbear to speak of many things.	Pluribus supersedeo.
Born to glory.	Natus gloriæ; ad gloriam.
He spake not a word of thee.	De te nihil meminit.
He came to that height of pride.	Eo insolentiæ processit.
As far as it is possible to be done.	Quoad ejus fieri potest.

A Collection of Phrases out of Dr. *Godwins* Roman *Antiquities*. Lib. 1.

Sect. 1. Ch. 1.	
To build a new Town.	URbem novam condere.
To set out where the walls of a Town should be.	Urbem } designare aratro; su- Mœnia } co.
To raze, or demolish a Town, or City.	Imprimere muris hostile ar- trum.
Chap. 2. *We flie to thee as to our only refuge.*	Ad te tanquam ad asylum, æra confugimus.
C. 10. *To keep the Assises.*	Forum agere.
To appoint where Assises shall be kept.	Forum indicere.
C. 15. *Huge Books, or Books of Ivory.*	Libri Elephantini.
C. 17. *An unconstant, unsetled mind.*	Ingenium volaticum, desulto- rium.
Led, spare, vaulting horses.	Equi desultorii.
He is to be barred from giving his voice.	De ponte dejiciendus est.
C. 18. *From the start to the staff; beginning to the ending.*	A carceribus ad metam; ab ovo, ad mala.
C. 19. *An ignoble Person; one of the Hinds.*	Inter cuneos residet.
To go into the Field; enter the Lists.	In arenam descendere.
C. 20. *To appoint where a Temple should be built.*	Effari Templum; sistere fa- num.

To fight for God and our Country. Lib. 1. Sect. 2.	Pro aris & focis certare.
Chap. 1. *Unfeignedly; like a Roman; from the heart.*	More Romano; i.e. ex animo.
Free Denisons of Rome *made such by cooptation.*	Civitate donati.
C. 2. *Curſed to Hell.*	Diis inferis devoti.
Senators of Rome.	Patres conſcripti.
Senators of the Lower Houſe; Members of the Houſe of Commons.	Senatores minorum gentium.
C. 3. *A Troop-horſe; a horſe for the Service of the war.*	Equus publicus,; militaris.
Men of no account; inferior; baſe perſons.	Ignota capita; ſine nomine turba. *Poet.*
C. 4. *An upſtart Citizen.*	Novus & reptitius civis. *Sal.*
A Gentleman; a Knight, of the firſt head.	Novus homo.
C. 6. *Free-born Citizens.*	Cives originarii; ingenui.
Free made Citizens.	Liberti; libertini; Civitate donati.
To make one free; to ſet at liberty.	E manu aliquem emittere; ad pileum vocare, vindictâ liberare.
I have a mind to give him his freedom.	Hunc liberum eſſe volo.
He is a { *Free* / *Noble* } *man.*	Habet tria nomina.
To pay ones debt.	Nomina liberare.
To run into debt.	Nomina facere.
To ſue for payment.	Nomina exigere.

LIB. II.

Sect. 1. Ch. 1.	
A good cudgelling.	Argumentum bacillinum.
Gods of the greater Nations.	Dii majorum Gentium; nobiles; conſentes.
Gods of the leſſer Nations.	Dii minorum Gentium; Dii indigetes; Semidei.
Country Gods, Tutelar Gods.	Dii patrii, Dii tutelares.
Indifferent, neuter, common Gods.	Dii communes.
The good Angel.	Bonus Genius.
The evil Angel.	Malus Genius.
The Womens Guardian Angels.	Junones.
It was done againſt the pleaſure of God.	Diis iratis factum. *Plaut.*

No man without his misfortune
He makes much of himself; he pampers his kite, carcaß.
A very pinch-belly, a thief to his own belly, carcaß.
The Grace-cup.
In a little Cottage.
A man that hath no certain abiding place, settled dwelling.
A very Eat-all; one that plays the glutton [greedy-gut] leaves not so much as manners in the diſh.

Quiſque ſuos patimur manes.
Genio indulget.
Genium defraudat.
Poculum boni genii.
Parvo ſub lare. *Hor.*
Homo incerti laris.
Lari ſacrificat.

Sect. 2.

Ch. 2. *It is seed-time.*
He makes a Feaſt without Wine.
Ch. 6. *With good luck, luckily.*
with ill luck.
To begin a thing.
It thundred luckily, we ſhall have good ſucceß, ſpeed well.
Protectors of the Commons.
C. 9. *He gave over being Prieſt; left his Prieſthood.*
C. 10. *The Battel was doubtful; fought with various ſucceß; now one ſide had the better, now the other.*
By ones own ſtrength.
Dainty cheer; ſave.
C. 11. *He hath ſent him a challenge; challenged him into the field.*
A denunciation of war.
C. 12. *It is undoubtedly true; true as Goſpel.*
An hard task.
C. 13. *One thief accuſeth another; the pot calls the pan burnt-arſe.*
C. 14. *A rude fellow; a lewd perſon; a very raſcal.* Cybeles *jugler.*

Credenda *Ceres* arvis, *Ov.*
Cereri ſacrificat.
Bonis avibus; auſpiciis; aveſiniſtrâ; cornice ſiniſtrâ.
Malis avibus.
Auſpicari rem.
Intonuit lævum.
Tribuni plebis.
Sacerdotio abibat.
Vario *Marte* pugnatum eſt.
Proprio *Marte.*
Saliares dapes.
Arietem emiſit.
Clarigatio.
Sibyllæ folium eſt.
Laborioſius eſt quàm *Sibyllæ* folia colligere.
Clodius accuſat mœchos.
Circulator *Cybeleius.*

C. 15.

C. 15. *A costly supper; a sumptuous feast; a feast for an Abbot; a commencement-supper; an installation-supper; Exceedings.*

C. 19. *To enterprise a thing without due reverence, or preparation.*

Must I be whipt for your faults? —suffer for your roguries?

Attend, mind what you are about.

To take a light taste of a thing.

The first offerings.

He grows in grace.

To slay the Sacrifice.

Shall I fall to? Must I to my work?

To satisfie by sacrifice; or, To pay the sacrifice.

He cannot stay till grace be said.

C. 20. *Witnesses to a Contract.*

To marry a wife.

The marriage-bed.

Where you are Lord, I am Lady; where you are Jack, I am Gill.

A wedding, and no wedding.

I will have nothing to do—— —— no dealing with you.

Take your things and be gone; packing.

Cæsar *hath divorced* Pompeia.

He hath cast off all goodness.

To close the eyes.

C. 21. *It is past help, ——care; all's in vain; to no purpose; there is no hope; he is given up for gone.*

You have your leave to be gone; you may be packing; depart.

To make a Funeral Sermon——Oration for one.

It is time now, now's the time.

A burial, and no burial.

An old carle; a down man; one that hath one foot already in the grave.

Cœna pontificia; aditialis.

Accedere ad rem illotis { manibus. pedibus.

Meum tergum stulticiæ tuæ subdes succidaneum?

Hoc age.

Libare.

Prima libamina.

Mactus est virtute.

Hostire victimam; mactare; ferire hostiam.

Agon'?

Litare.

Sacra haud immolata devorat.

Signatores.

Ducere uxorem.

Genialis lectus.

Ubi tu *Caius*, ibi ego *Caja*: i. e. ut tu dominus, ita ego domina.

Nuptiæ innuptæ.

Conditione tuâ non utar.

Res tuas tibi habeto; agito.

Cæsar Pompeiæ nuncium remisit.

Virtuti nuncium remisit.

Comprimere oculos.

Conclamatum est.

Ilicet.

Defunctum pro rostris laudare.

Jam tempus est.

Sepultura insepulta.

Silicernium.

Sect. 3.

C. 1. *The fourth day of* April. — Pridie nonas *Aprilis.*
Holy-day cloaths. — Purpura *Megalenſis.*
C. 2. *It is a ſecret, no body knows the reaſon of it.* — Eſt inter arcana *Cereris.*
C. 5. *Worſe ſcared than hurt; better than we looked for; not ſo ill as we feared; all will be well, the old Father dances.* — Salva res eſt, ſaltat ſenex.
C. 6. *Having a mind to make bets, to lay wagers.* — Sponſionibus concitatus.
He hath loſt both his labour and coſt. — Operam & oleum perdidit; opera & impenſa periit.
To fight at whorlebats. — Bellare ceſtu.
C. 7. *He was hummed extraordinarily, highly applauded for his verſes; —ſermons cried up mightily.* — Fregit ſubſellia verſu; oratione, clamatum rectè; bene; pulchrè; Grande ſophos.
C. 9. *To make a ſolemn vow unto God.* — Vota nuncupare; facere.
To make a vow to build a Church; inſtitute a Game. — Vovere templum; ludos.
To bind ones ſelf to make good his vow. — Signare votum.
Liable to make good his vow. — Voti reus.
Bound to performance of his vow. — Damnatus voti; voto.
To have ones deſire accompliſhed. — Damnari voti; voto.
C. 10. *Hirelings, perſons hired to play prizes.* — Auctorati.
A flouriſh before the fight. — Præludium.
It is one thing to flouriſh, another to fight. — Aliud eſt ventilare; aliud pugnare.
Weapons for { *ſhow.* / *fight.* } — Luſoria; exercitatoria tela. / Decretoria; pugnatoria arma.
To fight at ſharps, with naked weapons. — Dimicare ad certum; verſis armis pugnare.
To change ones poſture, purpoſe; go back with his word. — Cedere; demigrare de gradu.
He is put into a maze; driven to change his mind; put to a puzzle. — De mentis ſtatu dejicitur; deturbatur.
A ribanded garland; a conqueſt after a combat. — Palma lemniſcata.
He has won many a prize. — Plurimarum palmarum homo.
Diſcharged from his pains. — Rude donatus.
He hath a mind to put a trick upon you. — Tragulam in te injicere adornat. *Plaut.*

To

To play at blind-mans buffit; to wink and strike. — *Andabatarum* more pugnare.

He gives him a challenge,—dares him to fight. — Minimo provocat.

C. 11. *The end of a man's life.* — Vitæ humanæ Cataſtrophe.

A man fit for all parts,—good at any thing. — Omnium ſcenarum homo.

Recreatory diverſions. — Diludia.

A loſty ſtyle. — *Sophocleus* cothurnus.

C. 13. *He hath broken the league of hoſpitality.* — Teſſeram hoſpitii confregit.

Size-ace; a gooſe to a chicken; a dwarf to a giant; a very unequal compariſon, — Κῶϕ πρὸς χῖον. *Cous* ad chium.

A winning caſt; a luckie caſt. — Jactus pronus; plenus; ſenio; *Venus*; *Couis*.

A loſing caſt; dog-chance; an unluckie throw. — Jactus ſupinus; inanis; canis; canicula; chius.

I will put all to the hazard; win the horſe or loſe the ſaddle; win all or loſe all. — Aut ter ſex, aut tres teſſeræ.

To play at ball. — Datatim ludere.

To whip a top — Buxum torquere flagello.

To play at even or odd. — Ludere par impar; par ſit numerus dicere, an impar.

To leave boys play; to be paſt a child. — Nuces relinquere.

Croſs or pile. — Vel capita, vel navim.

C. 14. *He did invite me very earneſtly;—was very earneſt with me to come.* — Penulam mihi ſcidit.

Unbidden gueſts. — Muſcæ; umbræ.

He needed but ſmall invitation. — Illius ego vix tetigi penulam, tamen remanſit.

From the beginning to the ending. — Ab ovo ad mala.

The firſt meſs at the Feaſt. — Prooemium cœnæ.

The laſt meſs at the Feaſt. — Epilogus cœnæ.

The prime chief diſh; the moſt ſubſtantial diſh. — Caput cœnæ; fundus & fundamentum cœnæ.

A { *Light Supper.* / *Dole in meat or money.* } — Sportula.

A well furniſhed table;—great varieties; a plentiful Supper; great chear. — Cœna recta; dubia.

A thin Supper; ſlender Table; ſmall chear; ſcanty Proviſions. — Cœna ambulatoria.

Sect. I.

Chap. 1. *At latter Lammas; at Nevermas.*	Ad Calendas *Græcas.*
The fifth of January.	Nonæ *Januariæ, Januarii.*
The fourth of January.	Pridie nonarum *or* nonas *Jan.*
The thirteenth day of January.	Idus *Januarii.*
The twenty-fifth day of January.	Pridie Iduum [vel Idus] *Januarii.*
The first day of January.	Kalendæ *Januariæ.*
The last day of December.	Pridie Calend. *Jan.*
Fortunate days.	Dies albi.
Unfortunate days.	Dies atri; postriduani; *Ægyptiaci*; nefasti.
Marked for a black sheep.	Nigro carbone notatus.
To plant in an unluckie hour.	Nefasto quid ponere die.
Towards midnight.	Ad mediam noctem.
A little after midnight.	De media nocte.
Holy days.	Dies festi; feriati; feriæ.
Working days.	Dies profesti.
Half Holy days.	Dies intercisi.
A Law-day.	Dies comitialis.
Whole Court or Leet / *Half Court* / *Non Leet* } *days.*	Dies { Fasti. ex parte Fasti. nefasti.
A Common Barretor, wrangling fellow.	Homo comitialis.
C. 2. *An Old man.*	Deponamus.
Old men above sixty years of age have a Writ of Ease given them.	Sexagenarii de ponte dejiciendi.
A Will made in an Assembly of Pontifies.	Testamentum calatis comitiis.
By word of mouth.	Vivâ voce.
Be it as you desire.	Uti rogas.
I am for the old way; love no changing; like no innovations.	Antiquum volo; antiquo.
He had not seven voices for him.	Suffragiorum puncta non tulit septem.
He had not a man against him; every body stood for him.	Omne tulit punctum.
Possession of goods according to the Will of the Testator.	Secundum tabulas bonorum possessio.

Possessor

Poſſeſſion of goods againſt the will of the Teſtator.	Contra tabulas bonorum poſſeſſio.
A chief heir; heir to the main inheritance.	Hæres primæ ceræ; in primo gradu inſtitutus; ex toto aſſe.
The next heir, to ſucceed after the death of the firſt.	Hæres ſecundus.
A Legatee, one that hath a legacy given him.	Hæres eſt in imâ cerâ; legatarius.
Confuſed notes, foul papers.	Adverſaria.
Books of Accompt; Count-books.	Tabulæ accepti & expenſi.
Statute-books; or Books of Record.	Tabulæ publicæ.
Letters of Protection, or diſcharge from paying of debts.	Tabulæ novæ.
Bills of Sale.	Tabulæ auctionariæ.
A Letter. A Letter-carrier.	Tabellæ. Tabellarius.
A leaden plate to write upon.	Charta plumbea.
We opened the letter; broke up the ſeal.	Linum incidimus.
To turn Cat in the pan; ſay and unſay; recant what he hath ſaid.	Stylum invertere.
He knew his own hand and ſeal.	Cognovit manum & ſignum ſuum.
To read over a Book.	Evolvere librum.
The roller, or ſtaff on which a Book was rolled.	Umbilicus.
To bring to an end.	Ad umbilicum ducere.
To ſhake the lots together; to make even lots.	Æquare ſortes.
The good fortune to have the voices of the Prerogative Tribe.	Omen prærogativum.
To publiſh a Law to be made before the making of it.	Promulgare legem.
To move that a Law be made.	Rogare legem.
To record a Law.	Ferre legem.
To proclaim or publiſh a Law after it be made.	Figere legem; tabulam.
To cancel a Law.	Refigere legem.
The falling-ſickneſs.	Morbus comitialis.
To forbid the proceedings.	Obnunciare; intercedere.
C. 4. *Authors of beſt Account, Claſſical Authors.*	Claſſici ſcriptores.
Men of the firſt rank; Claſſick men.	Claſſici.
Under value.	Infra claſſem.

Men reckoned by the Poll; that paid little or nothing toward Subsidies.	Capite censi.
A Suitor for an Office.	Candidatus.
Men of small means,	Tenuis censûs homines.
Men good for nothing but to get children.	Proletarii, sc. homines.
To sound the { *Alarm.* / *Retreat.*	Classicum } canere. / Receptui }
C. 6. *To sue for an Office.*	Ambire magistratum.
To enter into an Office.	Inire magistratum.
To depart out of an Office.	Abire magistratu.
To have as many voices as the Law doth require.	Conficere legitima suffragia.
To have the most voices, though not so many as the Law requireth.	Explere suffragia.
C. 7. *He is ready; in a readiness.*	Altè præcinctus est.
A *loose Woman, lewd Strumpet.*	Mulier togata.
To go to their Cassocks; buckle for War; make ready for battel.	Ad saga ire; ad certamen se accingere.
Peace is to be preferred before War; Times of Peace.	Cedunt saga, arma togæ.
He is past a Stripling, grown up to years of discretion.	Excessit ex ephebis.
He is past a Child, grown to a mans estate.	Virilem togam sumpsit.
A Suitor for an Office; a Citizen of better than ordinary repute.	Candidatus.
A young Student of Oratory.	Eloquentiæ Candidatus.
To change his apparel, put on mourning weeds.	Mutare vestem.
A mourner; one that hath put himself into mourning.	Atratus.
An arraigned person.	Sordidatus.
His Majesties principal Secretary.	Candidatus Principis, Quæstor candidatus,
Childhood.	Ætas prætexta.
An embroidered Gown.	Toga picta; palmata; triumphalis.
C. 8. *Near is my shirt, but nearer my skin.*	Tunica pallio propior est.
He hath lost his money; purse.	Zonam perdidit.
To arm himself.	Arma induere.
To deflour a Virgin.	Zonam solvere.

Lib.

Lib. 3. Sect. 2.	
Chap. 2. *To discharge one of his Office; Dignity.*	Fasces abrogare.
To give place; yield unto; strike sail to.	Fasces submittere alicui.
C. 3. *The Decree of the Senate.*	Senatûs consultum. S. C.
To propound a matter to the Senate.	Referre ad Senatum.
I am fully perswaded of his opinion; side with him; am of his side.	In illius sententiam iturus sum; manibus pedibúsq; discessurus sum.
He was favourably heard in the Senate.	Senatus ei dabatur.
He came off well with the Senate; was acquitted by the Senate.	Stetit in Senatu.
The Senate neglected, condemned him.	Jacuit in Senatu.
To determine by voices; by polling.	Per singulorum sententias exquisitas decernere.
To strain, or seize on a mans goods.	Cædere, Concidere, Capere, Auferre pignora.
C. 4. *The Consul [Mayor] Elect.*	Ad consulatum designatus.
He was appointed to be Flamen Dialis *the next year.*	Flamen Dialis designatus est Consulibus sequentibus.
Men that have been Consuls.	Viri consulares.
C. 5. *The Authority of Magistrates to inquire into and reform manners.*	Virgula censoria.
Censor-like to chide, or rebuke.	Virgulâ Censoriâ notare.
To depose a Senator.	Senatu movere.
To degrade; pull one down a peg; put into a lower Tribe.	Tribu movere.
A degrading of one.	Capitis diminutio.
Five, ten, fifteen years space.	Lustrum; duo, tria lustra.
To purge, to muster an Army.	Condere lustrum.
C. 6. *To grant out a Writ or Action against a man.*	Dare actionem.
To condemn to death.	Capite damnare.
To pass judgment on one.	Dicere jus.
To see and allow the delivery of the thing, or person whereon judgment is passed.	Rem; hominem addicere.
Most bounden servants.	Servi addicti.
To sell a mans life; to take money to kill one.	Addicere sanguinem alicujus.

C. 9. *within an hundred miles.* — Intra centesimum Lapidem.
C. 16. *An excommunicate person.* — Homo sacer.
C. 22. *To take Provinces by agreement.* — Comparare Provincias.
Protectors of the Commons. — Tribuni plebis.
To have the Provinces by lot. — Sortiri Provincias.

Lib. 3. Sect. 3.

Chap. 1. *To fine one a sheep.* — Alicui ovem unam multa dicere.
C. 2. *Punishment by loss of life.* — Ultimum supplicium.
Disfranchisement. — Capitis diminutio.
To banish one out of the City. — Alicui aqua & igni interdicere; hominem proscribere.
To set a mans goods to sale. — Bona alicujus proscribere.
C. 3. *Punishment by whipping to death under a Cross.* — Supplicium more majorum.
C. 4. *To prick, egge a man on.* — Stimulo fodere.
To kick against the pricks. — Stimulos pugnis cædere.
A hangmanly sieve. — Carnificium cribrum.
C. 5. *Little Ease; the Cage.* — Mala mansio.
C. 8. *Saved from the Gallows.* — De Lapide empti; à furca nempti.
To be condemned to the Fencing-School. — Damnari in gladium; in ludum.
To be condemned to fight for his life with beasts. — Damnari ad bestias.
C. 9. *To be condemned to the drawing of water.* — In Antliam damnari.
I will send you to Bridewel; to the house of Correction. — In pistrinum te dedam.
He hath shackles about his legs. — Pedes habet annulatos.
To be condemned to the Mines. — Damnari in metallum, in opus metalli.
A branded Slave, a stigmatized Rogue; a Rogue that is burnt in the hand, brow, or shoulder. — Nebulo stigmaticus; literarum ergastulum inscriptum.

Lib. 3. Sect. 4.

Chap. 1. *To cite one into the Court.* — In jus vocare.
To administer justice publickly, sitting on the Bench; to keep a publick Sessions. — Agere pro tribunali.
To administer justice privately, standing on the ground; to hold a private Sessions. — Agere de plano.
C. 2. *To judge in person.* — Judicare.

To judge by proxie.	Judicium dare.
They are acquitted.	Secundum eos lis datur.
To be cast in one's Suit.	Lite, causâ cadere.
Condemned unheard, without being heard speak for himself.	Indictâ causâ damnatus.
To work under-hand, conspire against one.	Coire.
To circumvent, deceive, cheat, oppress with false judgment procured by bribery or confederacy.	Circumvenire; circumscribere.
Citizens by { *birth.* / *donation.*	Cives { Nati. / Adscripti, civitate donati.
To put under ones Name to the Magistrate.	Apud Prætorem profiteri; nomen profiteri.
To make a speech to the people.	Agere ad populum.
To assemble the people to give their voices.	Agere cum populo.
To be in chief command, Commander in chief in the Army.	Esse cum imperio.
Crown money.	Aurum coronarium.
To set to sale by the Cryer; exposed to publick sale.	Publico præconi; hastæ subjici.
To buy of one that hath no power, or right [nothing to do] to sell.	A malo auctore emere.
By Auction; publick Sale to them that will give most.	Auctio; hasta.
The sale of Cæsar's goods.	Hasta *Cæsaris.*
Goods set at sale.	Bona suspensa.
To put in bands to answer.	Dejicere libellos.
To shew he hath a mind to buy.	Digitum tollere.
12. A Pig with a pudding in the belly.	Porcellus *Trojanus.*
14. Let him be bigged for a fool.	Ad agnatos & gentiles deducendus est.
15. He is made sole heir.	Hæres in totum assem institutus est.
An heir in trust.	Hæres fiduciarius; imaginarius.
An heir to one quarter of the goods.	Hæres ex quadrante.
He that had the threescore and twelfth part.	Sextula aspersus.

An heir to some part of the whole.	Hæres ex toto asse.
C. 17. *To forge a crime never committed.*	Calumniari.
To { *enter an Action.* / *chuse Judges by lot.*	Dicam { scribere. / sortirl.
To play the false Proctor.	Prævaricari.
To desist in his accusation, let his suit fall.	Tergiversari.
A mortgaging of land to pay money.	Mancipatio fiduciaria.
To receive a mortgage, take land for security.	Accipere fiduciam.
Coyned money.	Æs signatum.
Bullion.	Æs grave.
To pay; repay.	Pendo; rependo.
C. 19. *To plead sickness for non-appearance.*	Morbum excusare.
C. 20. *To put money to use.*	Pecuniam occupare; fœnero fœnori dare; collocare.
To produce witnesses on both sides.	Litem contestari.
To put in sureties.	Satisdationes facere.
To pay his Fine.	Judicatum solvere.
To stand to the Verdict of the Court.	Rem ratam habere.
To make an end;——an agreement betwixt themselves.	Lites redimere; pactionem cere.
To tax the costs and charges of the suit.	Litem æstimare.
A citation of one into the Court.	Iu jus vocatio.
To accuse one of a crime.	Postulare aliquem de crimi
To enter an action against one.	Alicui actionem; litem in dere; diem dicere.
To implead one, or complain of him.	Nomen deferre alicujus.
To demand bail, sureties for appearance.	Vadari reum.
To enter into Bond for appear	imonium.
Sentence is put off till the	natur.
To swear he doth not accuse falsly, or maliciously.	C... jurare; dejur ... jurare.
An execution to seize on ones goods.	Edictum peremptorium.
He made his appearance in the Court.	Se stetit.
We must have longer time to consider.	Amplius cognoscendum.

Prisoner is reprieved.	Reus ampliatur.
st upon Life and Death on a	De Capite alicujus quærere.
an.	
11. To argue the case pro and	Manum manu conserere.
con, to fight hand to hand.	
ffer to wager a Suit in Law	Sponsione ; sacramento provo-
with one.	care ; rogare ; quærere ; sti-
	pulari.
wager a Suit in Law with	Contendere ex provocatione ;
at.	sacramento ; restipulari.
bind himself to pay what shall	Satisdare judicatum solvi.
n adjudged.	
bind himself to stand to the	Satisdare rem ratam habere.
dgment of the Court.	

LIB. IV.

ap. 1. To take a solemn Oath.	Jurare *Jovem* lapidem ; per *Jovem* lapidem.
rve under a Captain in War.	Mereri sub duce.
old Souldier that is discharg-	Miles emeritus.
d of his service.	
th served out his time in the	Stipendia confecit.
ars.	
ound a Call.	Classicum canere.
yn Battel.	Conferre signa ; collatis signis pugnare.
ake a great shout for Battel.	Barritum tollere.
dash or rustle with their Ar-	Arma concutere.
our.	
give a great shout in token the	Conclamare vasa.
Souldiers should truss up their	
ug and baggage.	
dily.	Colligatis vasis ; paratè ; expe-
	ditè.
bin a readiness continually.	In procinctu stare ; vivere.
2. A fresh-water Souldier.	Tyro.
n initiation into any Art, Sci-	Tyrocinium.
nce, War.	
old beaten Souldier.	Veteranus.
kip, skip, run from one thing	Agere velitatim.
to another.	
will save one, keep as far out	Ego ero post principia.
of danger as I can.	
is come to the last push.	Ad Triarios ventum est.

C. 3. *His great friend hath forſaken him.*	Vallus vitem decepit.
To aſſail by covert ways.	Cuniculis oppugnare.
To aſſault by open force.	Machinis oppugnare.
C. 4. *Thou haſt undertaken a hard task.*	Provinciam cepiſti duram.
To caſt account with the pen.	Scribendo conficere rationes.
C. 5. *The caſhiering of a Souldier.*	Ignominioſa dimiſſio.
The ſtopping of a Souldiers pay.	Fraudatio ſtipendii.
He hath loſt his pay.	Ære dirutus eſt.
A forcing of a Souldier to give up his Spear.	Cenſio haſtaria.
He is honoured with a Spear without a head.	Haſtâ purâ donatus eſt.
The puniſhing of the tenth man in a Legion.	Decimatio legionis.
He deſerves a good cudgelling.	Fuſtuarium meretur.
To be cudgelled.	Fuſte cædi.
To be ſcourged with rods.	Virgis cædi.
C. 6. *To yield the victory, to give one the better of it.*	Herbam dare.
Royal Spoils.	Opima ſpolia.

This for the firſt ſtoring of the Learner's Head and Memory with Phraſes. Then for the ſecond, the teaching him how to uſe them. This is eaſily ſhewn him, by but compoſing three or four Engliſhes (Epiſtles or the like) of ſome pretty length, more or moſt, of words capable of amplification by Periphraſes, and cauſing the Scholar firſt to tranſlate them according to the Verbal, and then out of his Memory, and by the help of his Phraſe books, according to the Periphraſtical way of Tranſlating. Take may be an Example.

Loving Friend,

It is commonly reported that you are ſick. Truly I am very ſorry for that. But I am much more ſorry, that you got your ſickneſs (for that they ſay too) by drinking too much. I earneſtly deſire you, firſt to repent of your having been drunk, and then to ſeek to recover your health. And if it pleaſe God, that you ever be well again, then have a care to live healthfully and ſoberly for time to come. This will be very pleaſing to all your friends, and eſpecially to

Your very loving Friend,

T. A.

Agrotare

Ægrotare te, Amice, vulgò dictum est. Eâ profectò re multùm abes. Atqui hanc te (quod item ferunt) ægritudinem largiùs bibendo contraxisse, id verò mihi multò magis dolet. Vehementer te oro, primùm ut ebrietatis te tuæ pœniteat, deindè utì des operam, quo convalescas. Quod si Deo erit visum, ut aliquando è morbo revalescas, id tibi curæ sit, cùm ut sanus, tum ut sobriùs deinceps vivas: id tuis omnibus valdè erit gratum, imprimis autem

Tui Studiosissimo,
T. A.

Valetudine te iniquâ, Amice præcharissime, tentari, in ore omnium versatur. Ea sanè res gravissimo me dolore afficit. Quod autem nimium indulgendo poculis (nam id quoque omnium sermone percrebuit) istum in morbum incideris, longè graviori mœrore animi afflictus sum. Majorem in modum à te peto, primum, ut pœnitenti animo esse animo, quod immodicum ingurgitando potum ebrietatem contraxeris, deinde ut amissæ recuperandæ sanitati operam sedulam des. Si verò Divinâ inspirante gratiâ, futurum id unquam sit, ut pristinam ad valetudinem restituaris, toto tum pectore hanc incumbe in curam, ut & illæsam corporis sanitatem conserves; & ad firmam sobrietatis te in posterum conformes. Hæc tu ratione es illud assecuturus, quod cùm universis amicis tuis erit gratissimum, tum multò maximè

Tui Amantissimo,
T. A.

By a few Exercises, after this manner performed, the Scholar will quickly discern the *Use*, as well as the *Elegancy* of Latine Phrases; and delight and labour, that all his Latines may swell and shine with such like Enlargements and Adornments. For his help to this purpose, amongst the many extant, I recommend the little Phrase-book put forth by Mr. *Farnaby*; as also that larger by Mr. *Huise*; but especially that Book of Phrases compiled by the Learned Dr. *Robinson*, Arch-Deacon of *Gloucester*, and sometimes Master of *Winchester* School, and going under the name of *Winchester Phrases*. Neither will my own *Idioms* be unuseful in that case.

Else the Teacher may take the *Phrases* added to the several Chapters of my *Particles*, and out of them, Chapter by Chapter, or otherwise, as he shall think best, compose little English Tales, and give them for Dictates to be translated by his Scholars, and profitably no doubt.

Or yet he may take this course, which I my self have taken with good success. He may contrive into several Englishes these two *Collections of Phrases* out of *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, and *Godwins Antiquities*, and cause them to be translated. This practice

C. 3. *His great friend hath forſaken him.*	Vallus vitem decepit.
To aſſail by covert ways.	Cuniculis oppugnare.
To aſſault by open force.	Machinis oppugnare.
C. 4. *Thou haſt undertaken a hard task.*	Provinciam cepiſti duram.

NOTE

This volume
tight binding ar
effort has been
duce the centre
result in

acad
microform

friends, and eſpecially to

Your very loving Friend,
T. A.

Agrotar

Ægrotare te, Amice, vulgò dictum eſt. Eâ profectò re multùm
lto. Atqui hanc te (quod item ferunt) ægritudinem largiùs bi-
do contraxiſſe, id verò mihi multò magis dolet. Vehementer te
, primùm ut ebrietatis te tuæ pœnitcat, deindeutì des operam, quo
ualeſcas. Quod ſi Deo erit viſum, ut aliquando è morbo reva-
, id tibi curæ ſit, cùm ut ſanus, tum ut ſobriùs deinceps vivas :

me has a very
and while every
en made to repro-
res. force would
in damage

Academic
orms

Or yet he may take this courſe, which I my ſelf have taken with good ſucceſs. He may contrive into ſeveral Engliſhes theſe two *Collections of Phraſes* out of *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, and *Godwins Antiquities*, and cauſe them to be tranſlated. This practice

C. 3. *His great friend hath forſaken him.*	Vallus vitem decepit.
To aſſail by covert ways.	Cuniculis oppugnare.
To aſſault by open force.	Machinis oppugnare.
C. 4. *Thou haſt undertaken a hard task.*	Provinciam cepiſti duram.
To caſt account with the pen.	Scribendo conficere ratio
C. 5. *The caſhiering of a Souldier.*	Ignominioſa dimiſſio.
The ſtopping of a Souldiers pay.	Fraudatio ſtipendii.
He hath loſt his pay.	Ære diruus eſt.
A forcing of a Souldier to give up his Spear.	Cenſio haſtaria.
He is honoured with a Spear without a head.	Haſtâ purâ donatus eſt.
The puniſhing of the tenth man in a Legion.	Decimatio legionis.
He deſerves a good cudgelling.	Fuſtuarium meretur.
To be cudgelled.	Fuſte cædi.
To be ſcourged with rods.	Virgis cædi.
C. 6. *To yield the victory, to give one the better of it.*	Herbam dare.
Royal Spoils.	Opima ſpolia.

This for the firſt ſtoring of the Learner's Head and Memo with Phraſes. Then for the ſecond, the teaching him how uſe them. This is eaſily ſhewn him, by but compoſing three four Engliſhes (Epiſtles or the like) of ſome pretty length, or moſt, of words capable of amplification by Periphraſes, causing the Scholar firſt to tranſlate them according to the V bal, and then out of his Memory, and by the help of his Phra books, according to the Periphraſtical way of Tranſlating. T may be an Example.

Loving Friend,

It is commonly reported that you are ſick. Truly I am ve ſorry for that. But I am much more ſorry, that you got you ſickneſs (for that they ſay too) by drinking too much. I ea neſtly deſire you, firſt to repent of your having been drunk, and then to ſeek to recover your health. And if it pleaſe God, th you ever be well again, then have a care to live healthfully and ſoberly for time to come. This will be very pleaſing to all your friends, and eſpecially to

Your very loving Friend,
T. A.

A grotart

Ægrotare te, Amice, vulgò dictum est. Eâ profectò re multùm illo. Atquì hanc te (quod item ferunt) ægritudinem largiùs bi-ndo contraxisse, id verò mihi multò magis dolet. Vehementer te o, primùm ut ebrietatis te tuæ pœniteat, deindè utì des operam, quo valescas. Quod si Deo erit visum, ut aliquando è morbo reva-, id tibi curæ sit, cùm ut sanus, tum ut sobriùs deinceps vivas: tuis omnibus valdè erit gratum, imprimis autem

Tui Studiosissimo,
T. A.

Valetudine te iniquâ, Amice præcharissime, tentari, in ore om-ium versatur. Ea sanè res gravissimo me dolore afficit. Quod au-nimium indulgendo poculis (nam id quoque omnium sermone ærebuit) istum in morbum incideris, longè graviori mœrore animi ictus sum. Majorem in modum à te peto, primum, ut pœnitenti iis esse animo, quod immodicum ingurgitando potum ebristatem traxeris, deinde ut amissæ recuperandæ sanitati operam sedulam ras. Si verò Divinâ inspirante gratiâ, futurum id unquam sit, pristinam ad valetudinem restituaris, toto tum pectore hanc in-ute in curam, ut & illæsam corporis sanitatem conserves; & ad nam sobrietatis te in posterum conformes. Hæc tu ratione es illud ilurus, quod cùm universis amicis tuis erit gratissimum, tum multò tuis

Tui Amantissimo,
T. A.

By a few Exercises, after this manner performed, the Scholar ll quickly discern the *Use*, as well as the *Elegancy* of Latine rases; and delight and labour, that all his Latines may swell d shine with such like Enlargements and Adornments. For his to this purpose, amongst the many extant, I recommend little Phrase-book put forth by Mr. *Farnaby*; as also that lar-by Mr. *Huise*; but especially that Book of Phrases compiled the Learned Dr. *Robinson*, Arch-Deacon of *Glocester*, and metimes Master of *Winchester* School, and going under the me of *Winchester Phrases*. Neither will my own *Idioms* be un-eful in that case.

Else the Teacher may take the *Phrases* added to the several apters of my *Particles*, and out of them, Chapter by Chapter, or otherwise, as he shall think best, compose little Eng-hes, and give them for Dictates to be translated by his Scho-rs, and profitably no doubt.

Or yet he may take this course, which I my self have taken ith good success. He may contrive into several Englishes these *wo Collections of Phrases* out of *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, and *God-ins Antiquities*, and cause them to be translated. This pra-

ctice

ctice will assuredly bring to a right understanding of the Natu of a Phrase, and of the way to use it, where-e're it be fou whether in Author or in Phrase-book.

And for the ease of the Teacher, and benefit of the Learne I do here communicate two sets of such Englishes (in Dialogue composed out of the Phrases of those Collections. Into the on of which, I have drawn all the Phrases in the Collection fro *Hermes Anglo-Lat* and so, that (except in a few of the first Di logues, made before I had thought of this way) all the Phrase in every Dialogue lye close together, and within a narrow com pass of the Book, so that if the Child cannot fetch them out o the Store-house of his Memory, he may find them with his ey within the limits of a Page of his Book: and the like is done i those composed of *Godwin's Phrases*. Try and trust.

XXXIV. DIALOGUES

Composed (in order to the shewing of Children the Us of Phrases) *out of, or agreeably to the* Phrases *collected out of* Hermes Anglo-Latinus.

DIALOGUE I.

Edward. Thomas.

Edw. IF my Master will needs make me make this Englis into Latine, I will make, as if I knew not how t make Latine.

Tho. You will never make him believe that Tale: for he hath heard, that you can make a Latine Verse: and so he will think you mean to make a fool of him.

Edw. I would be loth to make him angry at me, in regard he hath used to make much of me, when I do well.

Tho. Make haste then, and make an end of the Task he set you. If you want any thing, I will make it good. And if he be not pleased with your doings, I will make you friends again.

DIALOGUE II.

William. Richard.

will. HOW long are you making me a fire?

Rich. I make what haste I can.

will. Have you made my Bed yet?

Rich.

Rich. No, I have Supper to make ready firſt.

Will. Why do you not make a leg, when you ſpeak to me, but make a mouth at me?

Rich. Becauſe you are always making a ſtir about nothing, as if ſome body had made you a King, and had given you power to make Laws at home, and to make War abroad: when as you (poor man) are no ſuch thing.

Will. Whilſt I go out of doors to make water, make you haſte to make an end of your buſineſs within doors, leſt I make you be whipt for your idleneſs and ſaucineſs.

Rich. It is not you, that can make me do more than I liſt my ſelf.

DIALOGUE III.

Henry. Peter.

Hen. HOW does your Maſter?

Pet. He is alive and ſound.

Hen. When I ſaw him laſt, he looked ſomewhat paliſh.

Pet. He is indeed pale moſt an end.

Hen. He crack'd much of his wealth. I wonder what he made of his laſt years Crop.

Pet. He ſold it for neither more nor leſs, than it ſtood him in.

Hen. Was it you, that crack'd of your Exploits even now?

Pet. It was I.

Hen. Why then are you now in ſuch a fear, that you are not able to ſay a word?

Pet. I am by Nature ſomewhat timorous, and a little matter puts me in a fear.

Hen. Do well, and fear not.

Pet. Methinks that you, being weary with travelling, ſhould lay you down, and get a nap.

Hen. It is good advice: eſpecially ſince I have nought to do.

DIALOGUE IV.

Robert. Arthur.

Rob. I Saw t'other day ſome fine Summer-apples in an Orchard at the end of the Town. Who will go with me to get them?

Arth. Roger, I believe, will.

Rob. What is ſuch a little fellow, as he, good for? he ſhall not.

Arth. If my poor help can do any good, you ſhall more command me, than any perty King.

Rob. Say'ſt thou ſo, my dear heart? Then go we. But, I doubt, we ſhall not eaſily get over the Brick-wall.

Arth. And I am a little fearful, leſt ſome eye-witneſs, buſied about Houſhold-affairs, ſhould ſee us from the top of the houſe. And if we be deſcryed, we had better have been in the farthest part of the World.

Rob. You ſay true. And beſides, what fools ſhall we be, if for ſo ſmall a gain, as ſo poor a pittance of Fruit, as we ſhall get, will amount to, we ſhall do that, for which, beſides our pain and ſhame here, we may lie, and burn for ever in the bottom of Hell.

Arth. I love Apples well: but do no not like to pay ſo dear for them. So let them alone.

DIALOGUE V.

Peregrine. Edward.

Per. WHO made that new Song, which is ſo cryed up?

Edw. A certain pedling Poet, who hath nought, but one ſmall Field to live on.

Per. Whereabout lives he?

Edw. About the lower end of the Street, at the end of the Town.

Per. I thought he had lived in the middeſt of the City.

Edw. I met him this Morning at break of day: and he look't like one born in an unlucky hour. But look, here's the man his own ſelf, who made that Song, we are ſpeaking of. The reſt of our diſcourſe we muſt leave till another time.

DIALOGUE VI.

Allen. Benjamin.

All. WHY do you not repair that houſe of yours? It is like to fall.

Benj. It is my Brother's. Let him look to it if he will. He ſees its ruinouſneſs himſelf every day.

All. Perhaps he hath not wherewithal to repair it. And you your ſelf ſhould do ſomething to uphold it, not only as being his Tenant, but his Brother.

Benj. If his houſe come down, then that pride of his will come down, which will neither let him know himſelf, nor any friend of his.

All. Your own diſcourſe bewrays you to be an unkind Brother. And were I your Brother, I my ſelf would pull down my houſe with my own hands, rather than you ſhould live in any houſe of mine.

Benj.

Benj. I my ſelf have ſeen a man do as much as that comes to, with mine own eyes. But what got he by that? My Brother, I hope, will have ſome wit in his anger, and not pull an old houſe over his ears.

DIALOGUE VII.

Francis. Titus.

Fran. IF you will look hither a little, *Titus*, you ſhall ſee who comes here.

Tit. Be he who he will, I care not for him, whoe're he be, he looks like a ſloven.

Fran. If he be ſo, he is not by himſelf in that: but is followed by many. Perhaps he hath tarried long abroad out of doors: and thence it is, that he is not altogether ſo neat in his cloaths. But what doſt thou think I have been doing?

Tit. You look as if you had been writing. And what, I pray you, was it that you writ?

Franc. I had heard, that there is coyning money enough to ſink a Ship. And I was writing a friend word of it.

Tit. It is not for a little weight a Ship will ſink. Speak out your words, when you ſpeak ſuch loud things.

Franc. How you anſwer? you are as ſturdy as a dry ſtick that will break before it bow.

Tit. The day is well-nigh ſpent, and the night drawing on. Fare you well.

Franc. And fare you well too, who are always doing, but never make any riddance.

DIALOGUE VIII.

George. James.

Geo. I Hear, *James*, that *Humphry* is to go away within this two or three days.

Jam. Truly, *George*, he hath of a long time been very deſirous to go back into his own Country.

Geo. You mean that foreign Country, into which he went, after he was broken in his own.

Jam. You have no reaſon to upbraid him with his misfortune, ſince you have no cauſe, through any wrong by him, to complain of him.

Geo. Call you that misfortune, which was indiſcretion! How could he hope to thrive, who could never forbear doing miſchief.

Jam. His going hence hath had good luck, and it is some what better with him now, than formerly.

Geo. It waxeth night. And I am to go a hunting betimes to morrow. So fare him well, and you too.

DIALOGUE IX.

Christopher. Brian.

Chri. YOU rise, *Brian*, very early to play. I wish you would rise as early to study.

Bri. Christopher, here is one come to intreat our Master, that we may play to morrow. What will you advise him to do? For himself knows not what to say.

Chr. Let him say, that the Gentleman, who lately commended his Son to him to be taught, earnestly desires him to come to him, and hath sent his Man before to intreat his company. But say, is he a fit man to go to our Master? We had best take a little time to advise of that. But why are you so desirous of playing?

Bri. The greatest allurement to play, is the custom of playing.

Chr. But when our Master is entreated, we shall yet have our Fathers to intreat.

Bri. They will be ruled by our Master.

Chr. No such matter, I wish they would. It would be better both for them and us.

DIALOGUE X.

Jasper. Francis.

Jasp. FRancis, your Uncle went a journey: is he come back yet?

Fran. He was not come back last night. But whether he be come this morning, I cannot tell.

Jasp. Perhaps you were gone to bed, before he was come, or were gone abroad, before he was up.

Fran. Really, *Jasper*, if he should be gone away again before I see him, I am undone. And for fear I should not see him, I have made such haste, that I am run out of breath.

Jasp. My Father gave me an Apple well worth the eating. But I want a Knife to cut it withal: else I would give you some of it.

Fran. I do so love Apples, especially when they are ripe, that if you give me never so small a pittance, I shall thank you for it. And here's a Pen-knife (if that will serve) to cut withal.

Jasp. You are wise to have it about you.
Fran. And you are good, for giving to me what you love your self.

DIALOGUE XI.

Guy. *Timothy.*

Guy. *Timothy*, what account do you make of *Peter?*
Tim. Truly, *Guy*, I think him about to fall; he is so great a Gamester at Dice.
Guy. Some would think him to deserve to be praised for that.
Tim. But I think rather, that he should be punished for it. For, taught by the old Proverb, I shall ever think a Dicer, the better Player, the worser man.

DIALOGUE XII.

Philip. *Bartholomew.*

Phil. *Bartholomew*, are you and *Laurence* made friends again?
Bart. We differ but about one thing. I would have him go to School to study; and he does nothing but trifle away his time, and play the fool. You cannot but weep to think, how he loseth himself. For what else is it to lose ones time, but to lose ones self?
Phil. You can relish nothing but grave and serious things: and therefore are not so well pleased with his freedoms. But truly there is not a day, but I see and observe him; and I can find nothing but what is well advised, to come from him.
Bart. I make no complaints but to you: and if you will pardon me, but for this one time, I will complain no more.

DIALOGUE XIII.

Francis. *William.*

Fran. *Will.* up, and go to the Scholars Chambers from door to door, and call them up one by one.
Will. I am a little afraid, they should be a little angry with me for calling them up so soon.
Fran. A Scholar should be at his Master's beck. See you go then: and take heed you stay not. 'Tis a thing you may do without pains. And besides, you can do very much with them. They have slept till broad day. And sure 'tis time then for Scholars to rise.

Will. I am much engaged to you. And for this cauſe, though they were above three miles off, I would go. Have you any more to ſay to me?

Franc. Only that you would be gone, and tell them word for word what I ſay. And now you may be gone for me.

Will. Well. What I do is at my Maſter's command: and ſo I am out of gun ſhot. And it will not be for my profit to be undutiful to him, however, conſidering his worth, he is not uſed with reſpect enough by others.

DIALOGUE XIV.

Hugh. Chriſtian.

Hugh. WHere's *Petron* think'ſt thou now?

Chr. For the preſent I believe he is at my houſe.

Hugh. He was your Father's Footman. What employment do you think him fit for?

Chr. He is my Lord's Secretary, and hopes e're long to be the King's Counſellor.

Hugh. I imagine, he is one of *Carteſes* Sect: and if ſo, then I wiſh he be long in his right mind.

Chr. I hope he will, for all that. For laſt night at my houſe he ſpake ſuch things at Supper-time, as ſpeak him a knowing man: and one that, like *Janus*, ſees both before and behind.

Hugh. However for the preſent new Sects of Philoſophers are applauded, in the days of yore they were not tolerated. I believe that he ſcarcely holds any thing excellent, which is not to be found in *Bacon*. You do well to ſpeak favourably of him, who is of your Table.

Chri. I ſpake as the caſe ſtood, and not amiſs, as I ſuppoſe. And though for the preſent the *Ariſtotelian* and *Carteſian* Philoſophers differ one with another, yet they every hour grow nearer to an agreement.

Hugh. It was but in jeſt that I ſpake. And I would not that you ſhould report what I ſaid, word for word, to any other.

Chri. I have about ten miles to go to night: and ſo I muſt bid you farewell.

DIALOGUE XV.

Auguſtine. Geoffry.

Aug. WHat ſays the World of *Anthony*?

Geoff. Truly, *Auguſtine*, by the moſt he is held an excellent Philoſopher.

Au

Aug. I am glad of it, *Geoffry* I never feared but that he would prove a Scholar. But hath he not the report of a Spend-thrift?

Geof. He is so far from that, that most an end he goes without his Supper to bed.

Aug. I would gladly see him, and talk with him.

Geof. Say you so? Then I will presently go to the man, and bring him to you, if you will but lay this burden on me.

Aug. Will you do so? Then you will shew your self a man indeed. And unless you had rather go on foot, than on horseback, here's a Horse for you to ride on.

Geof. There is no need of my going: for look; here is the man himself we were speaking of. And now I remember my self, he told me he would come to Town to day to see you.

Aug. I am glad on't. But you should have told me of it before.

Geof. I ne're thought on't.

DIALOGUE XVI.

Ambrose Edmund.

Amb. WHat disease is *Hierome* sick of?

Edm. An Ague.

Amb. What Ague is he sick of?

Edm. A Quartan.

Amb. Which way go they about to cure him?

Edm. That, that never any before did.

Amb. Which, I pray?

Edm. When he is in his hot Fit, they pour on cold water.

Amb. That way his Physicians never will be chief among others, nor have a Civic Crown given them. But at whose charge do they practise upon him?

Edm. At mine.

Amb. I wish they may be careful and successful.

Edm. Amen.

DIALOGUE XVII.

Martin. Cyprian.

Mart. CYprian. If you be at leisure to hear it, there is a thing that I would tell thee.

Cyp. I am a little busie, *Martin*; I but I will not hinder you from telling it.

Mart. I have cause to be glad, that you are so courteous. There is a thing that troubles me.

Cyp. Then, since there is nothing that hinders you from speaking, speak it out.

Mart. Men are desirous most of all, of things, that are most hurtful to them.

Cyp. Well; be it so. What then?

Mart. There are some that say, that I rob'd a Neighbour's Orchard t'other day.

Cyp. If it be true, you have cause to be sorry.

Mart. I am innocent, and hate so great a wickedness, which is down-right stealing. But there is no room for me to clear my self.

Cyp. Then let it not trouble you to suffer innocently; but take your sufferings in good part. Businesses hinder me from staying any longer. And so I must bid you, Farewel.

DIALOGUE XVIII.

Theodore. Benjamin.

Theo. THE way, *Benjamin*, is, I think of the same length from *Huntington* to *Lincoln*, that it is from *London* to *Huntington*. How far off from *London* was *Everard*, when you received from him that poor piece of a Letter.

Ben. He was two days journey off.

Theo. What should the matter be, that he makes no more haste home?

Ben. I believe he is sick of his old disease.

Theo. What may that sickness be?

Ben. He is scarce of money.

Theo. He should make the more haste for that. But if he do not want credit, he may reckon, that so much credit as he hath, so much money he may have. What is it that brings him into want? For, I hope, he neither goes a wenching, nor a fudling at these years.

Ben. I think he is not given to Women: and 'tis but a poor deal of Wine that he drinks in a day. So that somewhat else, I suppose, is the matter. And indeed, I doubt, he minds not his Calling. And what Trade soever a man be of, he should let his Hook be always hanging. Else, if he have any matter of money remaining of his Portion, it will soon be spent.

Theo. Methinks at this time of the day he should understand himself.

Ben. So think I: but you see what a kind of man he is.

DIA-

DIALOGUE XIX.

Ephraim. Samuel.

Eph. WHY do they not carry into *Edmund*'s Chamber things fit to kindle the fire?

Sam. Because the weather is warm. And were it not; yet he endureth cold the best of any man living.

Eph. He hath just his Uncles conditions. But he is not sick?

Sam. How sick he is, I cannot tell But he eats Beef heartily.

Eph. And in truth, unless I were very sick indeed, I should take the same course that he doth. You are the nearest to him of any man, ask his Physicians advice about this.

Sam. I should not envy you for your imitating him. But he makes use of no Physicians.

Eph. What meat soever I should eat in my sickness, I should beware of it, that it hurt me not. But why hath he not the advice of a Physician?

Sam. Men that are in debt, and are not able to pay, seldom ask advice of Physicians, how sick soever they be; unless they be brought to that weakness, that they are not understood by any, when they would tell their case: But I must be gone. *Edmund* salutes you. Farewel.

DIALOGUE XX.

Philip. Roger.

Phil WHat, *Roger*, are we to have to Supper to Night?

Rog. That, *Philip*, is a secret to me. But I saw the Cook getting somewhat ready that casts a strong smell. Saffron, I think, it smelt of.

Phil. Well: you are like to go Supperless to Bed, for some lewd pranks that you have play'd.

Rog. I am given indeed a little to joking: but you are in a gross errour, if you think me to have play'd any lewd pranks.

Phil. You may deny it, that you are guilty of any fault: but the day would fail me, if I should reckon up all your crimes. And I am sorry for you: for you are sure to be punisht, unless some friend come to your relief. But if you can wrastle out of these troubles, I shall be heartily glad.

Rog. This is all I mind, to be innocent; at least inoffensive. And if I were the next moment to die, I know not, what any can condemn me for: but that some are so far from doing justice, that they know not the way of judging justly. And therefore I hope my Father will forbear me.

Phil.

Phil. The longer I have ſtay'd to talk with you, the more I ought to quicken my ſpeech. So, fare you well.

Rog. Farewel heartily.

DIALOGUE XXI.

Robert. Allen.

Rob. HOW old is *Gervaſe?*

All. He is about five and twenty years old.

Rob. What employment follows he moſt?

All. I think he minds Divinity moſt.

Rob. I thought he had ſtudied Phyſick.

All. There are every where ſo many old Phyſicians, that there is no where room for any new.

Rob. Has he ever preach'd yet?

All. Yes; and it troubles me exceedingly, that I was not preſent at the Sermon.

Rob. What hindred you from being at it.

All. I had a great mind to have been by: but I was ſo buſie that I was not at leiſure.

Rob. What do they ſay he preach'd about?

All. That it was for Kings to command, and Subjects to obey.

Rob. If young men will be ruled by me, they ſhould not ſo ſoon preach of high things. For they will have much ado not to be in fault.

All In that I cannot but yield to you.

Rob. Now it comes in my mind, I have ſomewhat to do within I pray thee come into the houſe.

All. Go you before, I will follow.

DIALOGUE XXII.

Simeon. Laurence.

Sim. Where were the laſt Aſſizes kept?

Lau. At *Lincoln.*

Sim. What news thence?

Lau. Ambroſe was condemned to death.

Sim. Who accuſed him of any Crime?

Lau. Peter.

Sim. And what Crime did he accuſe him of?

Lau. Of Treaſon.

Sim. I thought he had only ſued him in an Action of Treſpaſs, or at moſt had but accuſed him of Bribery.

Lau. Yes, he laid Treaſon to his charge.

Sim.

Sim. Were he only convicted of Theft, he might be pardoned; but being condemned for Treason, he will hardly escape being hang'd.

Lau. Let such then as see his death, fear his punishment, and flie his fault.

DIALOGUE XXIII.

Charles. Hervic.

Ch. DO you never write to *Bernardine?*

Her. I have little heart to set pen to paper to write to a man, that hath cast off all goodness.

Ch. Why say you so?

Her. So kind have I been to him, as to buy a house for him: and so ungrateful has he been to me, as to discharge me of his house; nay and to threaten, that if ever I came to his house, he would set fire on the house.

Ch. I confess, I committed a business of great concernment to his charge, and he put a trick upon me.

Her. Then, I imagine, you will hereafter have nothing to do with his friendship; but forbid him your presence.

Ch. I think, I shall so do.

Her. It is no more but what he deserves.

DIALOGUE XXIV.

Erasmus. Meric.

Eras. WHY, *Meric*, did you give *Joseph* a box on the ear?

Mer. Because he would not let me have my Inkhorn.

Eras. You have no authority of your own over him: and I shall look to this, that you shall not usurp mine.

Mer. Be pleased to forgive me this fault, and I promise you this, that I will do so no more.

Eras. That promise is but a shift: and be you never so crafty, I shall put you by all your shifts.

Mer. I shall provide better for my self, than just[illegible] you. And if you will command me any service, you shall [illegible] be faithful and diligent.

Eras. That is often said, but seldom done.

Mer. For this once make tryal.

Eras. I will try.

DIA-

DIALOGUE XXV.

Francis. Gervase.

Fran. HAve you not seen old *Herbert* all this day?

Ger. Yes, not very long ago I saw him walking with his Son *Robert*.

Fran. Had he his Gown on, or his Coat?

Ger. His Gown.

Fran. They that are asked their opinion of him, report him a man skilful in Greek, and well skilled also in Martial Discipline.

Ger. Yes, but they say the Son wipes the old man of his money; and is like to strip him of all his goods. And, what is worse, his friends keep his tricks from his Father.

Fran. Such a Son deserves to be made to go without his Portion. But put him in mind of his duty to his Father.

Ger. Young men are warned of many things, which are evil, but flie few. So 'tis to no purpose.

Fran. You cannot tell till you have tried. I entreat this of you. Let me prevail with you.

Ger. It can do no harm to try. I will do my endeavour.

DIALOGUE XXVI.

Samuel. Gerard.

Sam. WHat's the matter with *Bradwardine* this morning, that he hath such a lowring look?

Ger. He is as busie as can be a writing.

Sam. In writing what, is he so busie?

Ger. In writing Verses, whereof he must write out a whole Book.

Sam. And I am to write so many Epistles, that I have no leisure to make my Theme I wish you were at leisure to help me.

Ger. Where's the last Epistle you wrote?

Sam. I have laid it a drying.

Ger. Will you go a fishing, when you have written that Epistle you are in hand withal?

Sam. I am not yet at leisure: but you may for all me, when you please. And yet I wonder you should have nothing else to do. I wish your Father's letting you do as you list, make you not grow every day worse than other.

Ger. There's no danger I shall have a care of my self.

Sam. Then leave your prating, and be gone.

Ger. So I will. Mind you your concerns.

DIALOGUE XXVII.

James. Christopher.

Jam. ALas, *Christopher*, what will become of *Robin?*

Chr. Why so, *James?* I saw him in safety, both the last day of *January*, and the third day of *February*.

Jam. Yea; but they say he is given to swear by *Jove*.

Chr. That indeed doth not become a Child of that age (though many things of like sort do happen in the life of man, as I could shew by many instances, which I have in readiness, if it were not besides my purpose.) And therefore 'tis fit he smart for his folly.

Jam. His Master, I understand, lives hard by. I shall hope to see him by and by: and then I will tell him of him.

Chr. His Master, I am sure, will not take it ill.

Jam. That's well.

DIALOGUE XXVIII.

Cyriac. Paul.

Cyr. PAul, *Augustine* greets you well.

Paul. How does he himself, *Cyriac?*

Cyr. At present he is sick of a Cough; besides that he is lame of his feet.

Paul. I believe he is a man of good age.

Cyr. Yes truly, he is a man of good age.

Paul. What account do you make of him?

Cyr. Travel all *Europe* over by Sea and Land, and you will hardly find an honester man; and yet because he is red-hair'd, he is of no account with some, which afflicts him so, that sometimes he is not able to speake for grief.

Paul. For your sake, whatever others think, I shall have a good opinion of him; and you shall do well to comfort him, and bid him be of good courage.

Cyr. In confidence of your courtesie, I have said thus much of him: and on that condition, you will have a kindness for him, I will ever be a Servant to you.

DIALOGUE XXIX.

Theodore. Arthur.

Theo. WHat ails *Demea*, that he is in such an ill humour? He doth not use to be angry for nothing.

Arth.

Arth. I know not, unleſs it be, that his daughter has had a Child by *Davus*. But ſure there is ſomething in't; for he is not able to ſpeak for trouble of mind.

Theo. Is he not rather ſick of want?

Arth. I do not think that is the matter: for he is in no want.

Theo. Whatever it be, you that are of the ſame temper with him, may do well to pacifie his mind.

Arth. In confidence of his good nature, and our old acquaintance, I will try what I can do?

DIALOGUE XXX.

Peter. Roger.

Pet. HOW does *Gobard* prize his ſilver Tankard and Spoons?

Rog. He offers them for ten pounds.

Pet. He asks too much for his Commodities; will he not take under ten pounds for them, think you?

Rog. You will not buy them but at a great rate. And therefore it will be your wiſdom, though they be not all out worth ſo much, yet not to ſet them altogether at nought, as the faſhion is. Beſides, 'tis ſaid, he hath been offered eight pound for his Tankard.

Pet. I care not a ſtraw for that. It doth not weigh forty Ounces. And for what ſome think about it, I weigh it not thus much. Others have other thoughts. And one skilful Seller, that will not go a nails breadth from the truth, is worth a thouſand unskilful Cheapners, who only ſpeak by gueſs.

Rog. I take in good part all you ſay; and bid you farewel.

DIALOGUE XXXI.

Guy. Edmund.

Guy. WHat Country-man is *Jaſper?*

Edm. He is a *Lincoln* man; but his Anceſtors were of *Lancaſhire*.

Guy. I believe him come of ſome great Houſe.

Edm. Well born, I believe, he is: for in all Contracts, I ſtill obſerve, he ſtands to his word: and it is a thing proper to a Gentleman in his dealing to rely on truth, not on craft.

Guy. Lincoln is now unguarded, though formerly well fortified: and leſs, I believe, by the half, than it was anciently.

Edm. I think as much: and thence, I ſuppoſe, the Proverb, *Lincoln was*, had its riſe.

Guy. How far is it from *London?*

Edm.

Edm. It is two days journey off at leaſt, if not three.
Guy. And yet once one, that went out at three Clock in the morning from *London*, ſupped that night at *Lincoln*.
Edm. Then he rid Poſt.

DIALOGUE XXXII.

Patrick. Dennis.

Pat. HOW comes it to paſs, *Dennis*, that you are walking abroad at this time of the night?
Den. I might ask you the ſame queſtion, *Patrick*. But truly for the ſpace of ſome years (I may ſafely ſay for this full four years) I have been uſed to ſit up till late at night: ſince when I do not much matter going to bed betime.
Pat. Then certainly you ſleep till fair day.
Den. Till fair day, do you ſay? nay even till broad day.
Pat. You never riſe, and walk, I believe, by night: nor are diſquieted with dreams in ſleep time.
Den. No ſuch thing hath indeed befallen me for many years paſt.
Pat. For how long is your going into *France* put off? For a year? or for a month?
Den. I think but till ten days hence. I am not certain now: but I ſhall know within this two days. My Father talks of my going day after day. And in truth I ſhould have gone ſix years ago. But until within this month, it is a twelve-month ſince, I heard him ſpeak a word of it.
Pat. Within this four days, I being his Setter on, he reſolved me. But I have not ſeen him ſince then.

DIALOGUE XXXIII.

Stephen. Gerard.

Step. HOW go the ſquares in *Italy*?
Ger. Several, that came from about *Tarentum*, ſay, that at *Rome* all is well, and at *Milan*: but not at *Croton*, nor at *Venice*.
Step. Have you heard what things were done before *Naples*?
Ger. No; but they ſay, that the French Count is departed from before *Parma*.
Steph. What French Count do you ſpeak of?
Ger. Him, that in Council ſits next to the General. I have forgot both his Name and Title.
Step. How far was his Camp from the City.

Ger.

Ger. Above half a mile. Well, if you have any thing else to say, say it to day, and presently; for I must be gone: and to morrow shall be up to fit my self for going sooner, than I am wont.

Step. I have done.

Ger. Then farewel to you.

DIALOGUE XXXIV.

Anthony. Miles.

Ant. I Cannot but wonder, *Miles*, how *Demea*, a man never born to honour, should come to that height of insolence, as to despise his Kindred, and to say, when any of them comes near him, What do you touching of me? What do you coming at me?

Mil. He thinks they gape after his Estate.

Ant. I have a mind to creep into his favour, as far as it is possible to be done, but that I know not which way to take to do it.

Mil. He spake not a word of you when I was with him last, whereby I could gather that he intended to make you his Heir: and therefore you had best give over your enterprise.

Ant. Then, though I have many things to say, yet I shall forbear to speak of more; and rest content with my own Estate.

Mil. 'Tis very well.

XXXIII. DIALOGUES

Composed out of, or agreeably unto, the Phrases *collected out of* Godwin's *Antiquities.*

DIALOGUE I.

Thomas. George.

T. WHen *Romulus* was to build a new Town, he did wisely to set out, where the Walls of it should be.

G. But did he not demolish some old Town first, that he might have room in the place of that old one to set his new one?

T. No: he built it all stick and stone from the ground, and designed it to be a *Sanctuary*, whither Malefactors should flie for safety, as to an *Altar*.

G. But I hope he designed that Justice should be done there to every one: and that to that end, *Assizes* should be kept there.

T. Yes, and he appointed where the Assizes should be kept: and ordained too, that huge *Books* should be kept for registring of Laws, and recording *Acts* of Justice.

G. Such designs do not proceed from an unconstant wit, or wavering mind: but from a person of solid judgment, whose is no rambling knowledge, notwithstanding that he in riding may have with him his vaulting Horses, and vault now and then from the one to the other.

T. Nor from a person so old, as for dotage was to be debarred from giving his Voice at the Election of Magistrates: but of one that in a Race could, for strength, hold out from the start to the Staff; and would, for constancy in any good purpose, persevere from the beginning to the end.

G. Nor from any ignoble person, who had not courage, upon honourable terms, to enter the Lists with any Appellant, that should give him a Challenge.

T. Nor did he only set out, where the *City* should be, but also by the Voice of the Augurs appointed where *Temples* should be built, and *Churches* should stand: so that at publick Altars, and not only by Private Fire-hearths men might serve God.

G. Under such a Prince, who would not chearfully serve in the Wars, and manfully fight for God and his Country?

DIALOGUE II.

Edward. Anthony.

E. TEll me, I pray you, *Anthony*, whether *Carenius* were a free-born Citizen, or a free-made Citizen: and speak from your heart.

A. I should think my self curſed to Hell, if *I* should lye to you. *I* believe him a Citizen made ſuch by *Cooptation*.

E. I thought him indeed but a Gentleman of the firſt Head, a meer upſtart Citizen; one made free by ſome kind of Maſter, that had a mind to ſet him at liberty, and give him his freedom: and, that he might no longer paſs amongſt inferiour perſons, paid the debts that he was run into, not ſuffering any to ſue him for non-payment; and gave him Eſtate, whereby he was enabled to keep a Horſe for the ſervice of the War; and thence *I* judged it was, that by degrees he came to be a Nobleman.

A. Whatever he was once, all the Senators of *Rome*, as well thoſe of the Upper as Lower Houſe, do now think very well of him, and ſet much by him.

DIALOGUE III.

Henry. Gervaſe.

H. THough ſome are not to be perſwaded by reaſon ſo much, as by a good cudgelling, that there are any Gods at all, whether of the Greater or Leſſer Nations, yet the *Romans* were perſwaded, that each Nation had their *Country-Gods*, each City their *Tutelar Gods*, and that there were *Gods common* to all; that the Women had their *Guardian Angels*; nay that every man had from his birth a *good* and *evil Angel* attending on him.

G. So have *I* heard, *Henry*; and that theſe Angels did obſerve every man's actions; and were angry when any thing was done amiſs: ſo that if any misfortune befel a man (as there is no man without his misfortune) they would ſay it was done againſt the pleaſure of the Gods.

H. Gervaſe, Thoſe *Romans* were jolly fellows: and though amongſt them there were ſome, that would be Thieves to their own Carcaſs, yet there were others, who would pamper their kite; and though they lived in never ſo little a Cottage, or were men of no ſetled dwelling, yet they would keep their Feaſts, and therein play the Gluttons, and after all, drink their Grace-Cup alſo.

G. They were Lords of the World, and ſo might do what they liſted for any body elſe.

DIA-

DIALOGUE IV.

Edmund. William.

E. I Suppose, *William*, you discern it is Seed-time.

W. Yes, *Edmund*; and in regard it hath thundred luckily, let us with good luck begin the work; a work truly not to be disdained, no nor by the *Protectors of the Commons*.

E. I should be sorry to begin it with ill luck: and that we may go about it with the counsel of some *Augur*, let us consult *Crassus* in the case, and desire him to offer up a Sacrifice for us; and if upon his sacrificing, lucky tokens appear, we will not make our Feast without Wine.

W. Agreed: but we must go to some other person; for I have heard that he hath long since given over being Priest.

DIALOGUE V.

Arthur. Stephen.

A. I Suppose, *Stephen*, it is no news to you, that after a denunciation of [illegible]ar, it came to a Battel betwixt the *Romans* and the *Grecians*. But what, I pray, was the issue of that Fight?

S. The Battel truly was fought with various success for a long time: but at last the Roman General, who had challenged the Enemy into the Field, encountring the Grecian General hand to hand, by his own strength overcame, and killed him; and though it were a hard task to do this, yet, that he did it, is undoubtedly true.

A. No doubt but, after the Battel was over, they feasted at Supper on dainty chear.

S. In that they did nothing, but what was right, and usual.

DIALOGUE VI.

Richard. Thomas.

R. IT was a sumptuous Feast, *Thomas*, which we were entertained at to night.

T. You might, *Richard*, have called it a *Commencement-Supper*. May he that made it, daily grow in Honour as well as Vertue.

R. But I wonder you should approach it without due respect, with unwashen hands and dirty feet.

T. Eigh! The Pot calls the Pan Burnt-arse. Were not you as bad your self?

R. None but a rude fellow, would have said so. Besides, how you devoured, what you should but lightly have tasted of, and even before Grace was said! 'Tis a wonder you had patience to stay till the Sacrifice was slain. By these ill manners of yours you bring me to suffer for your folly.

T. What should a man do, when he is about any thing, but mind what he is about? I cannot abide to be so long at, Shall I? Shall I? Beside, no bit's sweeter than the first tastings.

R. Had you been a *Roman*, you must have satisfied for your Crime by the Sacrifice of a Lamb.

T. 'Tis better that I am what I am.

DIALOGUE VII.

Anthony. Tobias.

A. YOU hear, *Toby*, that my Cousin *Andrew* intends to marry your Niece *Joanna*.

T. Yes, *Anthony*, I hear so. They say the Marriage-contracts are written down in Nupial Tables, and attested by the Seals of Witnesses to those Contracts. He also hath provided himself of a *Ring* to give her; and she, of a yellow *Veil* wherein to be brought to him: and both of them have touched (all after the manner of the ancient *Romans*) both fire and water.

A. And are they not making a Marriage-bed too, wherein the new married Couple are to lie, after the Bridegroom hath led his Bride by Torch light from her Father's house to his own?

T. Yes; and they are providing Chear for the Wedding-feast to be held the next day.

A. I perceive they are resolved, it shall not be a Wedding and no wedding; and therefore will omit no Ceremony, not so much as the parting of the Bride's hair with a Fencers Spear, nor the sprinkling of the new-married Woman with water.

T. I wish their Marriage-day may be followed with a perpetual succession of days, still every one more happy than the former.

A. I hope it may be so, if he suffer her to be Lady, where he is Lord; and she so daily grow in grace, that he may have no just occasion to divorce her.

T. It is a sad thing, when things come to that pass, that the Husband is forced to tell the Wife, that he will have nothing to do with her, and bid her take her things, and be packing.

A. It seldom comes to this, till the one, or the other hath cast off all goodness.

T. I hope better things of those two.

DIA-

DIALOGUE VIII.

Polydore. Archibald.

P. Will you go, *Archibald*, to the Funeral of old *Reginald?*

A. That old Carle is dead, it seems, at last.

P. Yes, and we must follow him in order, as Nature shall permit.

A. I fear we shall come too late: for above an hour ago I heard the Bell-man crying, that it was then time to go; for that he was then carrying forth a doors.

P. Perhaps so: but the Funeral Rites require some time to be orderly performed in, and we may come soon enough for all that; at least to his Funeral Sermon.

A. Who is to make it?

P. His Cousin *Cameron*, as being the next a kin to him, and who closed his dying eyes, and received his last breath.

A. How long has he been kept up unburied?

P. Seven days; and in all that time his body hath been every day washed with water, and anointed with Oyl, in hope he might by those means be revived, if not quite dead, but only asleep. After that he was given up for gone, and his body in a Gown placed upon a Bed with his Feet forward to be carried forth to Burial.

A. His then is not like to be a Burial, and no Burial.

P. No sure. Will you go then?

A. E're we shall get thither, the Priest will thrice have besprinkled the people with water, and the chief mourning Women have told them, they had their leave to depart. So I think it to no purpose to go.

P. Then fare you well. I will go by my self.

DIALOGUE IX.

Jonathan. Gilts.

J. KNow you the reason, *Gilts*, why the *Romans* did on the fourth of *April* put on their best Cloaths?

G. Who I? why not? that is no secret, then began the Plays, instituted in Honour of their Great Goddess *Cybele*, to be celebrated.

J. 'Tis better than I looked for. I perceive, that neither you have lost your labour, nor your Father his cost in your Education.

G. I suppose you can tell also, why, when there was Running of Coach-Races, and Fighting at Whorlebats in the Great *Circus*, the people flocked thither.

J. Many were the reasons: and some went for one reason, others for another; some to see, and some to be seen; and some because they had a mind to lay wagers; they being of different Factions that ran, and fought.

G. Had you said this in a company of Learned persons, you had been highly applauded for your answer. I am alone, and can only say, Well.

DIALOGUE X.

Walter. Herman.

W. *Eusebius*, I hear, having had a desire of his accomplished, hath vowed to build a Church.

H. Yes, and to institute a Feast too in Honour of that Deity, whom he dedicates his Church unto.

W. Then he is liable to make good his Vow: for when solemn Vows are made to God, the maker of them is bound to the performance of his Vow.

H. This he knows: and therefore he hath bound himself to make good his Vow.

W. 'Tis well: the paying of this Vow may be the obtaining of another Prayer.

H. Like enough.

DIALOGUE XI.

Albert. Lewis.

A. Amongst the Honorary Games, wherewith the People of *Rome* were complemented by Muneraries, Fencing, I think, *Lewis*, was in greatest request.

L. I think so too, *Albert*; especially when, not Slaves, and Captives only fought therein, but hireling Citizens, yea and Noblemen; and they fought not for pleasure, but for life, and that without discharge, being bound by Oath to fight to death, or yield their bodies to be whipt, or burnt.

A. Yet did they in a flourish make use of Weapons for show, before they fought at Sharps with weapons for fight.

L. Yes, yes: and it was one thing when they flourished, another thing when they fought. Their flourish was but sportive, their fight was earnest. When once they came to fight with naked weapons, the stoutest He was sometimes put into a maze, and

and forced to change his posture, yea though he were one, that had won many a Prize, and had been thought worthy to be discharged. For besides the down-right blows, which they dealt, they endeavoured to put tricks on one another.

A. Sure it was pleasant to behold the *hoodwinkt Fencers* winking and striking, either on Horse-back, or out of Chariots.

L. Just as pleasant, as it is to hear two ignorant persons contending, after their manner, about things which neither of them understandeth.

A. Well, not all their ribbanded Garlands, nor pecuniary Rewards, should ever have tempted me to dare any man to fight in such Combats, wherein my life must lie at the mercy of the wavering people, and I must be killed, or saved, as they should hold down, or turn up their Thumb.

L. Nor me neither, I trow: for though some men, good at any thing, not only like, but praise these Recreatory Diversions in lofty style; yet I desire, that the end of my life may be attended, if not with gladness, yet at least with quietness.

DIALOGUE XII.

Seleucus. Pomponius.

THis I observe, *Pompony*, that till Children be grown to Man's estate, they will not leave Boys play: but be either playing at Ball, or whipping of Tops, or playing at Even or Odd, or guessing Cross or Pile.

P. Yea, *Seleucus*; and when they are grown up to years of discretion, yet still they will be playing at Chess, or Tables.

S. It were allowable, that men should refresh themselves now and then with those Divertisements, did they not venture so much (sometimes their whole Estates) on one luckie or unluckie cast.

P. He that is on the losing side, he hath no other way many times to recover his lesser losses, but by hazarding greater, and then he is for winning all, or losing all at one Throw.

S. I dislike these things the more, in regard many times of the inequality of the Gamesters in point of skill, who oft, in that, use a Goose to a Chicken.

P. He shall be thought amongst Friends, to have broke the League of Hospitality, who being challenged to play, shall refuse to gratifie a Friend therein; especially when it is but at small Games that they are to play.

S. They say indeed, 'tis better to play at small Games than sit out: but too many times they begin with small Games, and go

on to greater, till much money is loſt on one ſide or other: and that's the thing, which I diſlike.

P. It will be ſo, where men cannot rule their affections and paſſions, but do enſlave their reaſon to their appetite: elſe they might give over in good time, and before they have loſt more than they can be willing to ſpare.

S. Would Gameſters reſolve before-hand to give all their winnings to the poor, they would not be ſo greedy of playing, as they are.

P. I think ſo too.

S. And if they would reſolve not to loſe at one time above a certain moderate ſum prefixed within their own minds, they would not be ſo great loſers, as many times they be.

P. No doubt of that.

DIALOGUE XIII.

Abraham. Jeremy.

A. WEre you, *Jeremy*, at my Lord *Geiton*'s at Supper t'other night?

J. Yes, *Abraham*, I was. He was very earneſt with me in his Invitation to come: ſo I went.

A. I believe my Lord had at his Table unbidden Gueſts enow. And truly had he bidden me, I had needed but ſmall invitation. And how were ye entertained?

J. Not with a Dole, nor with ſcanty Proviſions, but a plentiful Supper. In the firſt Meſs were ſerved up Mulberries, Sauſages, Eggs, &c. In the laſt, variety of ſweet and delicious Meats. In the middle Courſe fat Veniſon, and that I took for the chief Diſh, though ſome might prefer Beef before it, and take that for the moſt ſubſtantial Diſh. And from the beginning to the ending, there was plenty of Mirth and Wine.

A. A right Supper indeed you tell me of; a Supper in which one could hardly have told what to eat of heartilieſt.

J. So, as I tell you, were we entertained.

A. Much good d'it you.

DIALOGUE XIV.

Allen. Peter.

A. HOW do you intend to order your Journies this Winter?

P. On the laſt day of *December* I ſhall be at *Lincoln*; on the firſt of *January* at *Grantham*. Thence on the fourth of *January* I will

will remove to *Stamford*; and on the fifth of *January* lie at *Cambridge*. On the twelfth of *January* I will set forwards towards *London*, and on the thirteenth of *January* I hope to lie at my Sisters house in *London*.

A. But when intend you to reach *Paris?*

P. At latter *Lammas*.

A. But why will you travel (as I observe you intend to do) only on some certain days, and not stir on others?

P. Because some of those days they account fortunate, and some of them unfortunate: and I should be loth to take any Journey on an unlucky day.

A. But I thought you would have said, because some of these days were Holy-days, or half Holy-days at least, and other, working days.

P. We Lawyers do not much mind nor matter, whether days be all Holy, or half Holy, but whether they be Law-days or no. For on whole Court-days we wholly attend the Courts, and on half Court-days as much as is necessary. Upon Non-Leet-days we have other things to do.

A. Yes, I believe you have always one wrangling Fellow or other to do withal, and on those days you converse with such Fellows to get new work, for which you will sit up till towards midnight, and rise again, if need be, a little after midnight.

P. Away, Sirrah, you are a Wag. I'le have you marked, if I live, for a black Sheep.

A. Your most humble Servant, Mr. *Ignoramus*.

P. And, fare you well, good Mr. *Dalman*.

DIALOGUE XV.

Erasmus. Conradus.

E. WHen think you will that old man *Julian* give up the Ghost?

C. Long since he made his Will, as I hear, in a Meeting of Priests.

E. Made he it in Writing, or by word of Mouth?

C. In Writing.

E. I wonder whom he made his chief Heir.

C. His Brother's eldest Son.

E. And whom hath he named for next Heir to him?

C. His Sister's youngest Son.

E. And what hath he done for *Peter Everard?*

C. He hath a Legacy given him.

E. It is a good thing for men to make their Wills in Writing: for so is the possession of their Goods, when they are dead, likely

likely to be according to, and not against the Wills of the Testators.

C. So was the Law of old: and for my part I like no Innovations.

E. And if such a Law were now to be made, I should vote as it was desired. I think the man hath so lived, as to be well beloved and esteemed by his Fellow-Citizens.

C. Out of doubt: for when he stood for the Burgess-ship, whereas his Competitor had not nineteen Voices, every body stood for him.

E. Did your Father vote for him?

C. He would have done it, if he might have been suffered: but he is above sixty years old; and so hath a Writ of Ease given him.

E. He is well, in my thoughts, he's freed from that trouble.

C. I e'en think so too, as the World rules.

DIALOGUE XVI.

George. Hervie.

G. I Think, *Hervie*, that before the Invention of Parchment, they did use to write on the Leaves of an *Egyptian* Rush, called *Papyrus*.

H. Yes, *George*, and before that on the inward Rinds of Trees. Nay, I have read that they sometimes wrote in Leaden Plates, and sometimes on Tables of Wood, covered with Wax; some Remembrance of which things I found in my Study the other day, as I was looking among my foul Papers.

G. But I trow, they did not write on those Tables with Pen and Ink, as we do on Paper.

H. No, no: they wrote with an Iron Instrument, which they called a *Style*, which was sharp-pointed at one end, and broad, but sharp-edged also, at the other end; that with the sharp point they might engrave any thing into those Tables, and with the broad edge scrape any thing out, which they had written and misliked.

G. That was wisely contrived: for the most cautelous may sometimes have occasion to recant what he hath said.

H. And of these Materials they composed, not only their Books of Account, and Stature-books; but also Letters of Protection; and Bills of Sale; and even their ordinary Letters sent by Letter-Carriers from one to another: which they so closed, with Thread and Wax, that nothing could be read on the in-side till the Seal was broken up, though it were easie for any man to

know

know from whom the Letter came, if ſent from a Friend, by the Hand and Seal on the outſide.

G. They did then contrary to what we do now. For every Age hath its faſhion. And even the *Romans* themſelves in after-times changed their manner of Writing, and wrote with Pen and Ink on Paper, whereunto, eſpecially if it were a Book which they wrote, they did faſten a Roller.

H. It is no ſhame to lay down old Cuſtoms, and take up new, when the new are better than the old. Hardly an Author doth write a Book, but he doth change his mind as to ſome things, before he hath brought it to an end. And when minds are changeable, it is no marvel if manners and faſhions change too.

DIALOGUE XVII.

Paul. Ulpian.

P. PRay, *Ulpian*, give me ſome account of the *Romans* manner of making their Laws.

U. I ſhall readily do it, *Paul*, as far as my poor skill will ſerve you. And the firſt thing I call to mind is, that after one of thoſe eight Magiſtrates, qualified for that purpoſe, had by himſelf firſt conſidered of a Law fit to be made, and then conſulted ſome Lawyer at leaſt, if not the whole Senate about it, he did publiſh the Law to be made, by hanging it out three Market-days together in the view of the people, that the conveniency of it might be examined and conſidered of.

P. Very well: and what was the next thing?

U. The next thing was, that the people being gathered together, and the Law read by the Town-Clerk, he that had promulged it, did, by an Oration to the people, move, that the Law might be made, being ſometimes ſeconded by his Friends, and ſometimes oppoſed by others.

P. And what followed then?

U. The Names of the Tribes, Centuries, or Pariſhes, being caſt into a Pitcher, and the Lots ſhaken together, the People gave their Votes, that Tribe ſuffraging firſt, that was firſt choſen, of which Prerogative Tribe he that had the good fortune to have the Voices, was in great hope of obtaining the Voices of the other Tribes, which ſeldom or never ſwerved from the determination of the Prerogative Tribe. Then, unleſs ſome Magiſtrate or Augur did forbid the proceedings, or ſome chanced to fall ill of the Falling-ſickneſs, or ſome other thing happened, whereby the Aſſembly was diſſolved, the Law was enacted.

P. After this, what was done next?

U. After

V. After the Law had been approved and recorded, it was publiſhed, and laid up in the Treaſure-houſe, keeping its force till it were cancelled.

P. I thank you for this account, which you have given me of this thing.

V. Much good may it do you.

DIALOGUE XVIII.

Caleb. Jacob.

C. THE *Romans*, as I underſtand, *Jacob*, were not all men of one rank in point of Eſtate: but ſome were Claſſick men, and ſome men under value.

J. Yes, *Caleb*: and you ſhall read in Authors of beſt account, that there were amongſt them men of ſmall means alſo, reckoned only by the Poll, and good for nothing, but to get Children.

C. Such were uſeful however, if it were but to make Drummers and Trumpeters of, on juſt occaſion to ſound the Alarm or the Retreat; though men of higher Rank, even of the Fourth Claſs, uſually performed thoſe Offices.

J. They were, I imagine, at great charges, in giving Doles, providing Dinners, and exhibiting Shows unto the People, beſides the pains and trouble of ſaluting the Citizens, and complementing of them, and ſoliciting for their Votes, when they ſued for any Office.

C. Yes ſure: and moreover, both when they entred into an Office, and departed out of it, eſpecially if they went off with honour, they were at charges.

J. But did every Suitor for an Office obtain his deſire, if he had the moſt Voices, though not ſo many as the Law required?

C. That I do not think; but I believe it was neceſſary, that every one ſhould have as many Voices as the Law did require, before he could be choſen into Office.

J. What you ſay is very probable; and I have nothing to ſay againſt it. So farewel.

DIALOGUE XIX.

Edmund. Cyriac.

E. MUch, *Cyriac*, is talked of the *Roman Gown*, a Garment ſo proper to the *Romans*, that they are often thence called the *Gown men*, as the *Greeks*, from their Cloak, were called

led the *Cloak-men*: can you give me any account of that sort of Garment?

C. Somewhat, *Edmund*, I can say, yet very little, because I have only read, or heard it spoken of, but never saw one. And first you may note, That the Gown was so proper to the Men, that it was a Note of Infamy for a Woman to wear it. Next, That it was not worn by any during the time of their Childhood, nor till they were grown up to years of discretion. Thirdly, That it was of divers colours, shewing the Wearers to be Suiters for Offices, Mourners, or Arraigned persons: for according to the variety of their Fortunes, so did they change their Apparel. Fourthly, That it was of divers Forms too, looser or straiter, open or close, plain or embroidered, as the Age or Condition of the person required.

E. Young Students of Oratory being grown to mans estate, as also the Lord General's principal Secretary, and in sum all Citizens of better place and esteem did wear, I think, a white Gown, whereas the Commonalty, or inferiour sort of people wore a black one.

C. It was not so at first: but in process of time it came to be so. But all who thought War to be preferred before Peace, did put off their Gowns, and go to their Cassocks, especially when it was necessary that they should make them ready for Battel: and aid by all thoughts of loose Women, to the love of whom men are oft too much addicted in times of Peace.

E. They who are such, seldom do deeds, whereby to arrive at the honour of wearing an embroidered, purple, triumphal Gown: no more do they, who when they should be arming themselves, are deflouring Virgins.

C. Well, though I have business of mine own to do, and, as we say by way of Proverb, *Near is my shirt, but nearer my skin*, yet, if you have any business of yours to command me, you shall find me in a readiness to perform it.

E. I have nothing further to trouble you withal at present: and besides, having through carelesness lost my Purse, I must go seek it

C. Then, my dear *Edmund*, adieu.

DIALOGUE XX.

Robert. Alexander.

R. *Alexander*, I have read, that the Kings of *Rome* had *Serjeants* to go before them carrying *Bundles of Rods*, and *Axes* tied up in those bundles; had their Consuls the like, when their Kings were driven out?

A. Yes,

A. Yes, *Robert*: they had ſo.

R. What uſe were the Rods for?

A. To puniſh ſmaller Offenders.

R. And what the Axes?

A. To puniſh greater Offenders.

R. But why where they tied in bundles?

A. Not only for conveniency of carriage, but that the anger of the Magiſtrate, who ought to do nothing raſhly, might be ſomewhat allayed, whilſt they were unbinding.

R. How long continued the Kings in their Office?

A. Their whole lives.

R. And how long the Conſuls?

A. A year: unleſs in the mean time upon any occaſion they were diſcharged of their Office. For to a Decree of the Senate, after a thing had once been propounded to the Senate, and determined by the Senate, all Officers were to yield, Dictators excepted.

R. Though the opinion of the Fore-man of the Senate was firſt asked, yet would not every man be of his opinion?

A. No, no. Sometimes they departed down from their Benches, and divided themſelves into ſides, each ſiding with *him*, whoſe Cauſe he favoured moſt: elſe by holding up and beckening with their hands, they ſignified what ſide they would take. And ſometimes they determined the matter by polling.

R. Happy ſure was he, who was favourably heard by the Senate, and came off well with the Senate.

A. Yes: but unhappy he, who was condemned by the Senate.

R. Were all the Senators always preſent at the Aſſemblies in the Senate-houſe?

A. They either were preſent, or elſe fined for their abſence, if they could not make a lawful excuſe for themſelves.

R. Did they always pay their Fines?

A. Either they paid them, or elſe the Common Treaſurer did ſtrain their Goods.

R. 'Tis beſt for every man to do his duty in his place: and but juſt it is that he, who neglects his duty, ſhould ſuffer for his neglect.

DIALOGUE XXI.

Rich. *Simon.*

SIMON, what Officers ſucceeded *Kings* in *Rome*.

S. Conſuls were the next after Kings.

S. Were they called *Conſuls* at their firſt Inſtitution?

S. They

S. They were first called *Prætors*, as going before the People; after *Judges*, because of their judging the People; and lastly, *Consuls*, as being they who should consult for the good of the People.

R. How old was every one to be before he could be made Consul?

S. Forty three: and besides, he was to have undergone the Office of *Quæstor*, *Ædile*, and *Prætor*.

R. How long continued the Consuls in their Consulship?

S. They were elected Consuls on the twenty fourth of *October*, they entred on the Consulship upon the first of *January*; and they continued in Office a whole year, sitting in an Ivory Chair drawn in a Chariot, and wearing a purple embroidered Gown, and being called, if they continued the whole year in their Office, *Honorary*, or Ordinary Consuls, whereas if they died, or were deposed in the mean time, they were called Unordinary, or *Supply*-Consuls.

R. Of the two Consuls, which had the precedency?

S. He who had the most Children; or was the elder man; or at the time of the Election was pronounced before the other; being thence called the Major, or Prior Consul.

R. What were they called after their Consulship was ended?

S. They were thenceforth called *Consular men*: and, whereas formerly Deeds were dated from the founding of the City, the manner of dating was by subscribing the Names of the present Consuls; and even what was purposed against the next year, was said to be designed to be, or be done, under the next Consuls.

DIALOGUE XXII.

Edward. Benjamin.

E. HOW many years, *Ben.* did the *Censors* continue in their Office?

B. Ordinarily five, in which time they did once by Sacrifice purge the Roman Army, whence the space of five years came to be called *Lustrum*.

E. What Beasts did they sacrifice, when they mustered the Army?

B. A Sow, a Ram, and a Bull (after they had led them thrice round the Army): whence that Sacrifice was called the Sow-ram-bull Sacrifice.

E. What did belong to the Office of the Censors?

B. To value every man's Estate, to register his Name, and place him in a fit Tribe.

E. Had

E. Had they nothing else to do?

B. Yes: they did enquire into mens lives, and reform their manners.

E. How did they punish Offenders?

B. They did depose Senators, and degrade others from their Tribe.

E. But whilst we talk of other mens Offences, and punishments, we shall have the Monitor by and by, with a Censor-like Authority, noting, and rebuking us. We had best to our Books.

B. I think so too.

DIALOGUE XXIII.

John. Allen.

J. WHat, *Allen*, belonged to the Office of the *City-Prætors?*

A. To judge, not only of Civil Cases, but Capital also: and not only to lessen the condition of the Offender, but also to condemn him to die.

J. In what order did they proceed in the Administration of Justice?

A. First they did grant out an Action against a man, then they did pass Judgment on him; and then see, and allow the delivery of the thing, or person, whereon Judgment had been passed.

J. I suppose then, that thence it was, that the *Romans* called Debtors, delivered up by the Prætor unto their Creditors to work out their Debt, *Addicted Servants.*

A. I so imagine: and though it be said, that one should sell another mans life, yet so it came to pass sometimes, and from the Prætors Form of Speech, when he did deliver up any Goods, that Phrase was borrowed, and came so to signifie.

J. I conceive also, that they judged of Causes only within the City, and had not Authority like that of the *City-Prefect*, who had the hearing of all Causes, within an hundred miles of *Rome.*

A. You are in the right of it, for that.

J. But were there not Officers in *Rome* called *Proprætors?*

A. Yes: after the Prætors had born Office of Prætor in the City for one year, they went the next year into some *Province* to bear the same Office there, and then they were called *Proprætors*, taking their Provinces by agreement, or else having them by Lot.

J. I suppose, the Government, and Governours of the City did often alter.

A. Very often. And at one time they had a sort of Magistrates, whom

whom they called *Sacrosancts*, whom it was so far from being lawful to hurt, or violently use, but in word, that if any violated the Law, whereby they were made such, they accounted him an excommunicated person.

J. What were these called more?

A. Protectors of the Commons.

DIALOGUE XXIV.

William. Robert.

W. HAD not the *Romans* divers sorts and degrees of *Punishments* among them?

R. Yes, yes. Sometimes one was fined a Sheep, and sometimes an Ox. Sometimes again they did punish with loss of life, and by whipping to death under a Cross; sometimes by disfranchisement, sometimes by banishing men out of the City, with more or less confinement to place; and sometimes by setting their Goods to Sale.

W. These were punishments for Citizens: what did they to their Servants?

R. When they designed not to kill them, but only to shame them, they did make them carry a heavy wooden grain'd piece of Timber like a Fork, upon their shoulders round about the City, and prick them forward with Goads, if they hung back: which Goads it booted the Servants little to kick against; for they were but pricked so much the more, till their backs were so full of holes, that they looked like Sieves, and themselves were called *Hangmanly Sieves.*

W. But you have not reckoned up yet all the ways of punishing, or tormenting amongst the *Romans*, unless I be mistaken.

R. No, no. Sometimes they put thievish Cooks in the Little Ease; Parricides they sewed up in a Leathern Sack, together with a Serpent, an Ape, a Cock, and a Dog, and threw them into the Sea. To draw out Confessions they did put men to the Rack; and with hot Plates and Iron Pincers burn and tear off their flesh from their sides. And sometimes, unless they were redeemed by their Friends, and *saved* (as we say Proverbially) *from the Gallows*, they were tumbled down the Tarpeian Rock, and had their Necks broken; or else they were by a Hook, thrust into their Throats, dragged to the Gemonian Stairs, and there, having their Thighs first broken, were burnt to death in a Coat dawb'd on the inside with Pitch and Brimstone.

W. But did they not sometimes reserve Offenders to be punished in such ways as might afford them some pleasure?

R. They did so: and to that end they sometimes condemned them to the Fencing-School, and sometimes to the Beasts; to fight with them for their lives.

W. Did they not sometimes punish their Slaves with hard labours?

R. Yes, yes. Sometimes they sent them to the Correction-house; sometimes they condemned them to the drawing of *Water*; or to the Mines, having Shackles about their Legs, to prevent their running away, and being branded with a Brand burnt into their Hand, Brow, or Shoulder, that they might be known again, if they did run away. Whence they were called *Branded Slaves*, and *Stigmatized Rogues*.

W. To punish severely, was the way to have their Laws kept more duly: for, nothing more spoils a City, than foolish pity.

DIALOGUE XXV.

Ulpian. Papinian.

U. DID the *Roman* Magistrates in their Judicatures proceed only according to written Law?

P. No, *Ulpian*, sometimes they judged according to Equity.

U. Did they always administer Justice sitting on the Bench?

P. No, sometimes they held a private Session.

U. Did they always judge themselves in Person?

P. No, sometimes they judged by Proxy.

U. Whom might they cite into their Courts?

P. Such as were Offenders against the Laws, or had Actions taken out against them, or were Prosecutors of Capital Offenders, or were Witnesses in Civil Causes.

U. What if a man's Case were good?

P. Then they acquitted him.

U. What if his Case were bad?

P. Then he was cast in his Suit.

U. I hope, they condemned no man before they had heard him speak for himself.

P. No, they were far from that kind of injustice: nor did they permit, that any should work under-hand, circumvent, or oppress another with false Judgment procured by Bribery, or Confederacy, that he might be condemned being innocent.

U. It had been an unworthy thing for any Citizen, whether by Birth, or by Donation; or any, who had rendred his Name to the Magistrate, to go about any such thing.

P. And yet, as the World goes, such things would be done, were it not free both to assemble the People, and to make Speeches

ches to the People, to give their Votes, by word of mouth, or in Tablets of Wood, that Laws might be made to prevent such things.

DIALOGUE XXVI.

Samuel. Arthur.

S. I Think, *Arthur*, it was a custom in times of Victory, to present him that was Commander in Chief in the Army with *Coronets of Gold*.

A. Yes, *Sam.* it was so for some time: but afterwards instead of those Coronets, they presented him with *Crown-money*.

S. It should seem that after a Victory the Goods of the Conquered were exposed to publick Sale.

A. Yes, and of others too: for I have read of a Sale of *Cæsar*'s Goods, who yet was never conquered.

S And I have read too of an Auction, wherein a King sitting in his Purple, with his Scepter, and other Princely Ornaments, was set to Sale.

A. In such Cases the Buyer had need take care, that he buy not of one, that has no power to sell.

S. Yes indeed, it stood the Buyer upon it to look to that: but Goods set to sale, it was free for any man to buy, that would shew he had a mind to buy them.

A. And if any man had a mind to redeem the Goods, he might do it, so be that he did put in Bands, and gave Security to answer the matter.

S. I should have no mind to buy a Pig in a Poke.

A. But I hope you will be very willing to buy a Pig with a Pudding in the belly of it.

S. Yes, at the price of a simple Pig, else I should be a simple Fellow, and deserve to be begg'd for a Fool.

DIALOGUE XXVII.

Robert. Andrew.

R. I Suppose, *Andrew*, that there were several ways and forms, by which the *Romans*, when they died, conveyed their Estates to others after them.

A. Yes, *Robert*; some they made Heirs, and some they made but Legatees: and their Wills they sometimes made in Writing in an Assembly of the People, namely in times of Peace: Sometimes by word of mouth in the presence of three or four Souldiers,

namely, in time of War, and most particularly when they were ready to give Battel.

R. Did they always directly give their Estates to them, whom they intended their Heirs?

A. No: sometimes they made them over to an Heir in Trust, who should after resign them unto the true and lawful Heir.

R. Did they always make one certain person sole Heir to the whole Estate.

A. No, no: they did sometimes make several persons Heirs to some part of their Estates, as themselves pleased, one perhaps to eleven parts of his Goods, another to one quarter of his Goods, a third to the four and twentieth part, and a fourth had the threescore and twelfth part.

R. But might they give away what proportion of their Estates they pleased in Legacies?

A. I cannot tell that: but there was a Law made, whereby it was unlawful for any to give away in way of Legacy unto any, except to the Kinsmen of him, which manumised him, or some other persons, above fifty Shillings.

R. Though it seem reasonable, that every man should do with his own, what he pleaseth, yet it is not fit his Heir should be wronged over much

DIALOGUE XXVIII.

Hottoman. Paul.

H. WEre Judges always amongst the *Romans* chosen by Vote?

P. No: sometimes they chose them by Lot.

H. Did they allow of it, when a man entred an Action against any, to forge a Crime against him never committed by him?

P. By no means: on the contrary rather they ordained, that whosoever should forge an Accusation against another, should be burnt in his Forehead in token of Infamy. Nay (so much they loved plain and down-right dealings) they thought not well of him, who should either play the false Proctor, or so much as desist in his Accusation.

H. What if a man, being cited into a Court, to answer for indirect means used in the attaining of an Office, did plead sickness for his not appearing?

P. He underwent a Penalty.

H. Whether a man were fined in any Summ of Money, or owed Money upon Bargain, or upon Use, how came he discharged of his Debt?

P. By

P. By paying what he was fined, or had promiſed, and repaying what he had borrowed, and that either in coyned Money, or in Bullion; the firſt by numbering it, the ſecond by weighing it.

H. But what if a man had not ready money to pay?

P. He might ſecure it to his Creditor by mortgaging of Land to pay it, if his Creditor would take Land for Security.

H. I ſuppoſe, there was none, who put Money to Uſe, but would be willing to that.

P. I cannot tell. A man may be cheated even that, as well as any other way, if he deal with a Knave, as they, who do put Money to uſe, do find by very frequent experience.

DIALOGUE XXIX.

Nicolas. Valentine.

N. THE more, *Valentine*, that I conſider the practices of the *Romans*, the more Equity I ſtill find in their Judiciary proceedings.

V. I am of your mind, *Nicolas*: for what can be more equal, than that after Citation of any one into Court, and both Parties had made their appearance in the Court, before they did produce Witneſſes, Sureties ſhould be put in, by the Defendant, to pay his Fine, and by the Plaintiff, to ſtand to the Verdict of the Court; and by both, that, unleſs they did make an end betwixt themſelves, the Party caſt in the Suit, when the Charges of the Suit were taxed, ſhould defray them.

N. And it was very equal, was it not? that when one was accuſed of a Crime, the Judge, that ſat upon Life and Death, ſhould put the Accuſer to it to ſwear, that he did not accuſe maliciouſly.

V. Yes it was ſo: as alſo that when any did implead another, and enter an Action againſt him, and he had demanded Sureties of him for appearance, he ſhould accordingly enter into Bond for his appearance.

N. But moſt equal it was, that, if the Caſe were dubious, ſo that there were need of longer time to conſider, before Execution, to ſeize on a man's Goods, were granted out, the Priſoner ſhould be reprieved, and Sentence put off till the third day.

V. So it was: and where there was ſuch caution in proceeding, and ſuch equity in judging, none needed to fear, upon good cauſe, to offer to wager a Suit in Law with any; nor any, to wager a Suit in Law with another; or to come to it, and in open Court argue the Caſe *pro* and *con*; or to bind himſelf either to ſtand to the Judgment of the Court, or to pay what he ſhould be adjudged.

N. I wish there were the like Equity in all Courts.
V. You may wish it; but you shall never find it.

DIALOGUE XXX.

Henry. Vrian.

H. I Prithee, *Vrian*, give me some account of the Customs of the *Romans* in making Peace or War.

V. I will do it, *Harry*, with all my heart, if you have leisure to hear me. First then, when they made a Truce, a Herald took a Stone in his hand, and, in the Name of the State, took a solemn Oath, That he did deal sincerely in the making of that League; and then he did cast the Stone out of his hand, wishing that himself might perish, and be cast out of all he had, if he dealt fallaciously, as that stone was cast out of his hands.

H. But what did they do, when a League could not be made, but they must needs come to a Battel?

V. When the Captain had sounded a Call, and the Souldiers, who served under that Captain, had stood a while in readiness, after that they had first made a great shout for Battel, and had rustled a while with their Armor, they did joyn Battel.

H. I pray you, what Ceremony was used, when they were to remove their Camp?

V. They did give a great shout, in token that the Souldiers should truss up their Bag and Baggage, and then they marched away readily.

H. Were any excused from serving in the Wars?

V. Yes, old Souldiers discharged of their Service, as having served out their time in the Wars, unless the Lord General called them forth again in case of great need, when the business was not so fit to be trusted to the skill, or Valour of fresh-water Souldiers, but was to be managed by old beaten Souldiers, who would not keep out of danger as far as they could, but fight it out stoutly, till it came to the last push.

H. It were not indeed to be expected, that men, in their initiation into War, should so gallantly behave themselves, as those, who by long experience had been inured thereunto. But I am afraid, that by my skipping thus from one thing to another, I quite tire you, therefore I will give over.

V. You are very welcome to ask, what you please, and discourse as long as you please. And I am ready to serve you in any thing within my skill and power.

DIA-

DIALOGUE XXXI.

Theodore. Benjamin.

T. A Prince, when his great Friend had deceived him, was ſometimes forced for want of ſuccour, to ſhut up himſelf for ſecurity in a walled Town: what courſe did the *Romans* then take for the conquering of that place?

B. Sometimes they aſſailed it by open Force, environing it with a deep Ditch, and a Rampire; approaching the Walls under Muſcles, and Target-Fences, and moveable Turrets, and battering it with Baliſts, Scorpions, and Rams: and ſometimes by covert ways, working under ground, till they had digged through the Walls, and were got into the Town: and ſometimes when neither Force nor Cunning could prevail, they tired out the Citizens with the troubles of a long Siege, or pined them out with want of Proviſions.

T. In the mean time they put themſelves to great Charges to carry on the War.

B. Yes ſure: He that would caſt up the account of their Charges with the Pen, would undertake a hard task. But when once a deſign is begun, it ſeems a diſparagement to give it over, without accompliſhing what was deſigned.

T. Wiſe therefore was the man that ſaid, With good advice make War.

B. And unwiſe are they, that follow not his counſel.

DIALOGUE XXXII.

Cyriac. Edward.

C. THE Warlike Diſcipline of the *Romans*, as I have heard, was very ſtrict. That ſure could not be preſerved, but by ſevere puniſhments inflicted on Offenders againſt it. Can you, *Edward*, give me any account of thoſe puniſhments?

E. Some, *Cyriac*, I think I can. For leſſer faults they puniſh'd them, either with caſhiering, or ſtopping of their Pay (the Wages of him that loſt his Pay going into the Exchequer) or by forcing them to give up their Iron-headed Spear, (which was no leſs a diſgrace, than it was a grace to be honoured with a Spear without a head); alſo by taking their Wheat from them, and making them eat nothing but Barley bread (if it were a whole Cohort, which had loſt their Banners); or by taking their Girdles from them (if they were Centurions that had offended); or making them ſtand bare-footed before the Lord Generals Pavilion with long Poles in their hands (which is ſomewhat like

our doing Penance in a white Sheet) or by letting them blood in one of their Arms, if through heat of blood they had been too adventurous.

C. What were then their punishments for greater faults?

E. Sometimes they did beat them with Cudgels; and sometimes they did scourge them with Rods.

C. What were their Faults that were thought to deserve Cudgelling?

E. They were these; not to send about the Ticket, wherein was the Watch-word; to forsake their place, where they were appointed to keep Watch; to steal any thing out of the Camp; to bear false witness against their Fellows; to abuse their bodies by Women; to commit the same fault thrice.

C. What were the faults, for which they were whipped with Rods?

E. Breaking their Ranks by going out of Order.

C. Was that so great a fault?

E. Yes sure in their esteem: for they were sometimes for it sold for Bond-slaves, beheaded, or hanged.

C. What if a whole Legion offended?

E. They were punished by Decimation, every tenth man by lot being cudgelled, or otherwise punished, the rest escaping with little or no punishment.

DIALOGUE XXXIII.

Rupert. Lewis.

R. I Imagine, *Lewis*, that as the *Romans* were very severe in their Military punishments, so they were no less generous in their *Rewards*: can you give me any account of what they did in that point?

L. I think, *Rupert*, I can. They rewarded both the General and his Souldiers with Rewards suitable to their Merits.

R. What Rewards did they honour the General withal?

L. First, with the Name of Imperator confirmed unto him in the City by the Senate, after it had been given him in the Field by the Souldiers, after the slaughter of ten thousand Enemies, or taking of some Great Place. Secondly, with the appointment of a solemn Procession, wherein for several days Prayers, and Sacrifices were offered to the Gods in his behalf, which was done upon his sending Letters dight with Laurel to the Senate. Thirdly, at his coming home they honoured him, upon less Occasions with an Ovation (wherein he sacrificed to the Gods a Sheep); and upon greater, with a Triumph (wherein he sacrificed a Bull). And as at his Ovation he wore only a plain Purple

Purple Gown, and a Garland of Myrtle, and came walking on foot, or riding on Horse-back, being met only by the Commonalty of *Rome*, and the Gentlemen without the Senators; so at his Triumphing he wore an embroidered Gown; came riding in a Chariot, with a great Crown of Gold held over his Head; and was met by the Senators themselves, with the best of the *Romans*; after which he did hang up his Royal Spoils in a Temple Consecrated to *Jupiter Feretrius*. Fourthly, they did to his Honour erect Trophies of Brass or Marble, with Inscriptions upon them, to perpetuate the Honour of his Victory, and sometimes Statues, and Columns, and Triumphal Arches.

R. These were noble Rewards indeed enough to stir up active Spirits to brave Atchievements. But what had the Souldiers?

L. They were honourably rewarded also. For sometimes they had Offices bestowed on them, as the place of a Centurion, Prefect, or Decurio; sometimes their Pay was encreased; sometimes the Spoils taken in War were shared among them; and sometimes they received Military Gifts of several sorts according to their deserts?

R. I pray you, what were they?

L. In former Ages they received a certain measure of Corn called *Adorea*: afterwards they were honoured with Bracelets for the Hand-wrist; Chains to wear about their Necks; Horse-Trappings; a Spear without any Iron at the end of it; and Crowns of several sorts.

R. What, I pray you, were those several sorts of Crowns?

L. First, not to mention the Triumphal Crown of Gold sent by the Senate to the Lord General in Honour of his Triumph; nor the Oval Crown made of Myrtle-tree, and worn by him at his Ovation; nor the Obsidional Crown made of Grass (thence called the *Grassie Crown*) and given by the Souldiers to the Lord General, when they were freed from a Siege: To that Souldier who had saved a Citizen's life there was given a *Civick Crown*; To him who first scaled the Enemie's Walls there was presented a *Mural Crown*, representing the Battlements of a Wall; On him, who first entred the Enemie's Tents was bestowed a *Camp-Crown*, bearing the resemblance of a Bulwark, and thence called the *Bulwark Crown*. He who first entred the Enemie's Ship, was honoured with a *Naval Crown* pourtrayed with many Shipbeaks, and thence called the *Beaked Crown*.

R. But was the Civick Crown bestowed only upon Souldiers?

L. At first it was so: but afterwards it was also bestowed on the Lord General, if he spared a Roman Citizen, when he had power to kill him.

R. Let

R. Let me trouble you but with one Queſtion or two more and then I ſhall have done troubling of you.

L. Ask, what you pleaſe, and welcom.

R. I obſerve, that in Races, and the like Maſteries, he that was overcome, did gather ſome of the Graſs of the place, and give it unto the Conqueror, as an acknowledgment of his being conquered: in what Cuſtom of the *Romans* was that Action founded?

L. In this, that the Souldiers freed from a Siege, by preſenting to the General a Crown made of the Graſs, growing in the place, where they were beſieged, did thereby yield up unto him their Right in that place. And thence came it to paſs, that he that would confeſs himſelf worſted in any Conteſt, did make his Confeſſion in this Form of words, *I give you Graſs.*

R. I thank you for all this trouble, and am your obliged Servant.

L. I am glad I have been able to ſerve you in any thing. Farewel.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of Variation of Phraſes.

TO enable the Scholar the better to make uſe of his Phraſes, as alſo to enrich him with the greater ſtore of them, *Variation of the Phraſes* will be very conducing. Of this therefore let the Teacher firſt give him ſome *Rules*, and then put him upon the practice.

For *Rules*, he may furniſh him with them according to his diſcretion out of his own Obſervation: Or if he think good, he may make uſe of this Collection.

Rules of Variation.

1. A *Verb Active* may be varied by a *Verb Paſſive*, by putting the Nominative Caſe of the Active Verb into the Ablative with *à* or *ab*; and the Accuſative into the Nominative, making the Verb agree with it in Number and Perſon: as,

Ego lego Virgilium.
Virgilius legitur à me.

Sometimes the Nominative before the Verb Active, may be the Dative after the Paſſive: as,

Non me ullus intelligit. *Id vitium nullus notaverat.*
Non intelligor ulli. *Id vitium nulli notatum erat.*

But this is moſt uſed in Poets.

If the Verb Active govern a Dative Caſe of the Perſon, then it will not be convenient to vary the Nominative Caſe before it by a Dative Caſe after the Verb Paſſive; becauſe then there will be two Datives together: And therefore we vary not, *Referam tibi gratiam*, by *Referetur mihi tibi gratia*, but by *Referetur tibi à me gratia.*

The Dative Caſe after *videor* [I ſeem] is not variable by an Ablative Caſe with a Prepoſition. *Vide Voſſ.* Lat. Gram. p. 51.

2. A *Verb Paſſive* may be varied by a *Verb Active*, by putting the Nominative Caſe into the Accuſative, and the Dative or Ablative into the Nominative, and making the Verb agree with it in Number and Perſon: as,

Viris bonis honeſta petuntur. *Ille ab his laudatur.*
Viri boni honeſta petunt. *Hi illum laudant.*
Ab hoſtibus conſtanter pugnatur. *Occurritur nobis à doctis.*
Hoſtes conſtanter pugnant. *Docti nobis occurrunt.*

3. The

3. The *Ablative Case Absolute* may be varied by putting the Ablative into the Nominative, and turning the Participle into a Verb with some of these Particles, *dum, cum, quando, si,* in such Moods as the Particle used therewith, requires: as,

Rege veniente
Dum veniret Rex } *hostes fugerunt.*

Imperante Augusto
Cùm imperabat Augustus } *natus est Christus.*

Superbo regnante
Quando Superbus regnabat } *In* Italiam *venit.*

Note, If there be no *Participle* expressed together with the Ablative Case Absolute, then the Participle *ente* or *existente* is understood, and the variation will be made by *sum, fui,* &c. as.

Me [*existente*] *duce*
Si ego dux fuero } *vinces.*

Credo pudicitiam { Saturno [*ente*] *rege* / *Quando* Saturnus / *rex erat* } *moratam in terris.*

4. The *Nominative Case* with his Verb and Particle may be varied by turning the Nominative Case into the Ablative; and (the Particle being put away) the Verb into a Participle agreeing with it: as,

Postquam arbor dejicitur.
Arbore dejectâ.

5. An *Adjective* that hath *res* expressed with it, may be varied by putting away *res*, and putting the Adjective into the Neuter Gender: as,

Deus { *res omnes* / *omnia* } *ex nihilo creavit.*

6. An *Adjective of the Neuter Gender* whose Substantive is understood, may be varied by expressing *res*, and putting the Adjective into the Gender agreeing with it: as,

Unum quodque
Rem unam quamque } *suo designare nomine.*
Id forsan difficile
Forsan res ea difficilis } *est.*

7. The *latter of two Substantives* being a Genitive Case of Possession, may be varied by an Adjective Possessive agreeing in Case with the former Substantive; and *vice versâ*: as,

Domus

Domus patris, paterna domus. *See Treat. of Partic. c. 64. r. 1. n. 4.*
Herilis filius, filius heri.
So, *Mulier monstrosa; monstrum mulieris.*
Scelus viri; vir sceleste. Plaut.

8. An *Adjective Absolute in the Neuter Gender* with his Genitive Case, may be varied by putting the Substantive of the Genitive Case into the Case of the Adjective; and the Adjective of the Neuter Gender into the Gender of the Substantive: as,

Hoc noctis; Hâc nocte.
Per { *diversa terrarum* / *terras diversas* } *distractus est.*

9. An *Adjective with his Substantive* wherewith he agrees in Case, may many times be elegantly varied by putting the Adjective into the Neuter Gender (if it already be not) and the Substantive into the Genitive Case: as,

Ne { *eum quidem leporem* / *id quidem leporis* } *habuerunt.* Cic.

Mihi { *hoc negotium* / *hoc negotii* } *dedêre.* Ter.
Quis hic homo? Quid hoc hominis? Ter.
Huic { *alia merces* / *aliud mercedis* } *erit.* Virg.
Per { *gentes terrásque diversas* / *diversa gentium terrarúmq;* } *volitabant.* Flor.

10. The *Accusative Case before the Infinitive Mood* may be varied by turning the Accusative into the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood into the Indicative or Subjunctive with *quod* or *ut*, accordingly as those Particles require: as,

Te incolumem rediisse / *Quod tu redieris incolumis* } *gaudeo.*
Te abire / *Ut tu abeas* } *jubeo.*

Note, The Infinitive Mood may not be resolved into another Mood with *quod* or *ut* indifferently: but sometimes by *quod*, sometimes by *ut*. *See Eng. Partic. c. 75. r. 3. 4, 5, 6, 7, 8.*

11. The Nominative Case with his Verb having *quod* or *ut* with it, may be varied by putting away *quod* and *ut*; and turning the Nominative Case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood: as,

Quod

Quod tu bene vales } *gaudeo.*
Te bene valere }
Ut tu fabulam agas } *volo.*
Te agere fabulam. }

12. The Verb *habeo* may be varied by the Verb *sum*, by putting that word into the Dative Case, which was the Nominative before *habeo*: and that into the Nominative, which after *habeo* was the Accusative: as,

Ego habeo domi patrem.
Est mihi domi pater.
Non habeo ego argentum.
Non est mihi argentum.

13. The *Genitive Case* governed of a *Noun Partitive*, may be varied by a Preposition, and such Case as he governs; and *vice versâ*: as,

Quorum } *alter te scientiâ augere potest.* Cic.
E quibus }
Major juvenum; *De juvenibus major.* Hor.
Multæ istarum arborum } *manu meâ satæ sunt.* Cic.
Ex arboribus istis multæ }

14. The *Genitive Case after the Superlative Degree* may be varied by *è*, *ex*, with an Ablative; or *inter* with an Accusative Case: as,

Virgilius *doctissimus* { *Poëtarum.* / *ex Poëtis.* / *inter Poëtas.*

15. The *Infinitive Mood Active* after a Verb of *Motion*, or denoting any *Intention*, may be varied several ways. For instance, *Venio salutare matrem* may be varied, (1) By the first Supine; as, *Venio salutatum matrem.* (2) By a Participle in *rus*; as, *Venio salutaturus matrem.* (3) By a Gerund in *di* with *ergò*, *gratiâ*, *causâ*; as, *Matrem salutandi causâ venio.* (4) By a Gerund in *dum* with a Preposition; as, *Venio ad salutandum matrem.* (5) By a Gerundive with *ergò*, *gratiâ*, *causâ*; as, *Matris salutandæ gratiâ venio.* (6) By a Gerundive with a Preposition; as, *Ad matrem salutandam venio.* (7) By a Subjunctive Mood with *ut*; as, *Matrem ut salutem venio.*

Note, Every one of these ways of varying may be varied by all, or the most of the other ways: as the first Supine by the Infinitive Mood; Participle in *rus*; Gerund, Gerundive; Verb. So the Participle in *rus* may be varied by the Infinitive Mood; first Supine, Gerund, Gerundive, Verb. So the Gerund in *dum* by

by the Infinitive Mood; first Supine; Participle in *rus*; Gerund in *di* with *causâ*, &c. Gerundive with Prepoſition; Verb with *ut*. So Gerundive by Infinitive Mood, &c. So Verb of Subjunctive Mood with *ut*, by Infinitive Mood, &c.

16. The *Infinitive Mood Paſſive after an Adjective* may be varied ſeveral ways; for inſtance, *dignus eſt amari*, may be varied, (1) By the latter Supine; as, *Dignus eſt amatu.* (2) By a Verb of the Subjunctive Mood with *ut*; as, *Dignus eſt, ut ametur*: or *qui*; as, *dignus eſt qui ametur, quem ames.* (3) By a Noun of a cognate original and ſignification; as, *Dignus eſt amore.*

Note, Every one of theſe ways of varying may be varied by the other. The Supine by the Infinitive Mood, the Subjunctive Mood with his Particles, and the Noun. The Subjunctive with his Particle by the Infinitive Mood and the Supine. And the Noun by the other ways of varying before mentioned.

Note alſo, That the uſing of the Infinitive Mood after the Adjective, is Poetical or Hiſtorical.

17. The *Comparative Degree* may be varied

(1) By his *Poſitive* with *magis* and *quàm*: as,

Vilius argentum eſt auro.

Magis vile eſt argentum, quàm aurum.

(2) By his *Poſitive* with *Comparative* Particles, *tam, æquè, adeo, ita, ſic, perinde*, anſwered by *quàm, ac, atque, ut*, having ſome Negative Particle before the former of them, after theſe Examples.

[*Virtus eſt auro pretioſior.*]

Aurum non tam eſt pretioſum, quàm virtus.
Aurum non tam eſt pretioſum, ut virtus.
Aurum non æquè eſt pretioſum, quàm virtus.
Aurum non æquè eſt pretioſum, ac virtus.
Aurum non æquè eſt pretioſum atque virtus.
Aurum non adeo eſt pretioſum, ut virtus.
Aurum non ita eſt pretioſum, ut virtus.
Aurum non perinde eſt pretioſum, ac virtus.
Aurum non perinde eſt pretioſum, quàm virtus.
Aurum non perinde eſt pretioſum, ut virtus.
Aurum non ſic pretioſum eſt, ut virtus.

So, *Aurum haud tam,* [*æquè, adeo, ita, ſic, perinde*] *eſt pretioſum, quàm,* [*ac, atque, ut*] *virtus.*

18. The Superlative Degree may be varied

(1) By his Comparative Degree: as,

Plato erat vir omnium elegantiſſimus, is variable.

1. Affir-

1. Affirmatively.

Plato vir erat cæteris [aliis] *omnibus elegantior.*
Plato vir erat, quàm cæteri omnes elegantior.

2. Negatively.

Plato vir erat, quo non alius [alter] *elegantior.*
Haud erat quisquam [ullus] *Platone elegantior.*
Nemo erat Platone [*quàm Plato*] *elegantior.*
Nihil [*haud quicquam*] *erat Platone elegantius.*

3. Interrogatively.

Quis Platone erat elegantior?
Quid erat Platone elegantius?

(2) By his Positive with Comparative Particles, *tam, perinde, æquè, adeo, ita, sic*, answered by *quàm, ac, atque, ut.*

1. Negatively.

Nemo erat tam elegans, quàm, [*ut*] *Plato.*
Nemo perinde erat elegans, ac, [*atque, ut*] *Plato.*
Haud erat quisquam æquè elegans quàm, [*ac, atque, ut*] *Plato.*
Haud erat quisquam adeo elegans, ut Plato.
Nemo sic [*ita*] *erat elegans, ut Plato.*

2. Interrogatively.

Quis tam [*perinde, æquè, adeo, sic, ita*] *erat elegans, quàm* [*ac atque, ut*] *Plato.*

(3) By his Conjugate Substantive: as,

Summa erat Platonis Elegantia.
Plato elegantiâ omnes vicit [*præstitit; superavit.*]
Platonem elegantiâ superavit nemo.
Plato erat à nemine elegantiâ superatus.
Quem non elegantiâ superavit Plato.
Plato nulli elegantiâ cessit [*secundus erat.*]
Platoni quis non elegantiâ cessit?
Plato erat omnibus elegantiâ superior.
Plato erat nullo elegantiâ inferior.
O singularem Platonis elegantiam!
O, quanta erat Platonis elegantia!
Quem cum Platone possis elegantiâ æquare?
Plato pene ipsa erat elegantia.
Plato elegantiæ omnis erat antistes [*exemplum, idea.*]
Platonis erat incredibilis elegantia.

19. *Single words* may be varied several ways:

1. By their one several Cases, and that——

(1.) Without any variation of the whole Sentence, according to several Grammar Rules in part already touched upon, and yet further observable by the heeding Reader.

Est ubi in Dativum vertitur, &c.
Opus autem adjectivè, &c.

Communis, alienus, &c.
Magnitudinis mensura, &c.
Nomina diversitatis, &c.

Infinitum quoque utrinque, &c.
Vertitur hic Genitivus, &c.
Ætimo vel Genitivum, &c.
At misereor & misereſco, &c.
Reminiſcor, obliviſcor, &c.
Potior aut Genitivo, &c.
Ex his quædam efferuntur, &c.
Verba comparandi, &c.
Hæc variam habent, &c.
Dicimus, tempero, moderor tibi, &c.
At ex his quædam cum aliis caſibus, &c.

Laus & vituperium, &c.
Quædam ex his quæ ſimilitudinem, &c.
Natus, commodus, &c.
Adjectiva quæ ad copiam, &c.
Horum nonnulla, &c.

Pauca ex his mutant, &c.
Hunc Accuſativum mutant, &c.
Rogandi verba interdum, &c.
Veſtiendi verba interdum, &c.
Valeo etiam interdum, &c.
Ex quibus quædam, &c.
Vertitur hic Ablativus, &c.
Verbis quibuſdam additur, &c.
Paſſivis additur Ablat. &c.
Poëticè Infinitivus Modus, &c.
Vertuntur Gerundii voces, &c.
Quæ ſignific. partem temp. &c.
Dicimus etiam in paucis, &c.

(2.) With ſome light variation of the whole Sentence: as,
Sapientia rerum omnium præſtantiſſima eſt.
Sapientiæ præ rebus omnibus ſumma eſt præſtantia.
Sapientiæ
Sapientiam } *non omnes præterea in univerſo res præſtant.*
O ſapientia! quænam è rebus omnibus æquè ac tu præſtans eſt?
Sapientia inter omnes uſquam in orbe toto res nihil eſt præſtantius.

2. By their *Synonyma's*: as,
Enſis, gladius. Amo, diligo. Sæpe, frequenter.

3. By their *Equipollents*; *nullus, non ullus.*
Aliquis, non nemo: aliquando non nunquam: rarò, non ſæpe; doctus, non indoctus: bonus, minimè malus.

4. By their *Periphraſes*: as,
Philoſophus: Vir ſapientiæ ſtudioſus.
Ovidius: Sulmonenſis Vates.
Occidere: Vitâ privare.
Rhetorica: Ars ornatè dicendi.

5. By an Enallage
(1.) Of a Noun.
1. For a *Verb*: as, *Judicent alii; Aliorum eſto judicium.*
2. For a *Participle*: as, *Hoc* { *te impellente* / *tuo impulſu* } *fecit.*
3. For an *Adverb*: as, { *Lætè* / *Lætus* } *iſthuc audio.*

(2.) Of a *Verb* for a *Noun*: as,

Scientia tua } *nihil est.*
Scire tuum }

(3.) Of a *Participle* for a *Verb*: as,

Consuli } *opus est.*
Consulto }

(4.) Of an *Infinitive Mood* for the *Indicative*: as,

Ex illo { *fluebant* } *res Danaûm.*
{ *fluere* }

(5.) Of a *Present Tense* for a *Preterimperfect Tense*: as,

Tu si hic { *esses* } *aliter* { *sentires.*
{ *sis* } { *sentias.*

(6.) Of the *Plural Number* for the *Singular*: as,

Ego populo imposui.
Nos populo imposuimus.

(7.) Of the *Second Person* for the *Third*, with his Nominative Case: as,

Qui annum nôrit, omnes nôrit.
Unum nôris, omnes nôris.

(8.) By Tropes of Rhetorick.

(1.) A Metonymie of { *Belli* } *vis perculit.*
the *Efficient*: as, *Eos* { *Martis* }

Or of the { *Sunt* Itali *tantes.*
Subject: as, { *Testis est* Italia.

Or of the { *Cedat paci bellum.*
Adjunct: as, { *Cedant arma togæ.*

(2.) An *Irony* of the contrary: as,

Vir male rem negligenter gessisti.
Bene vir curâsti probè.

(3.) A Metaphor: as,

Omnes { *excitantur* } *ad studia gloriâ.*
{ *incenduntur* }

(4.) A *Synecdoche* of the *Member*: as,

In magno peri- { *eadem urbe* } *continueremur.*
culo eram, quod { *iisdem mœnibus* }

Or of the *Whole*: as, { *Imperium Ro-* } *ardet bello.*
{ *manum* }
{ *Orbis terrarum* }

Or of the { *Interfector* } *civium interficitur.*
Species: as, { *Parricida* }
Orator eloquentissimus; *Alter* Cicero.

Or of the Genus: as, *Perdidimus* { *Catilinam.*
{ *hominem.*

Venientibus malis obstat { *Fortitudo.*
{ *Virtus.*

20. *Sentences* may be also varied by several ways.

1. By turning the *Affirmative* Speech into a *Negative*, and contrarywise a *Negative* into an *Affirmative*: as,

1. *Avaritia vitiorum omnium est teterrimum.*
   Nullum est vitium tetrius quàm avaritia.
   Est vir prudentiâ singulari.
   Non vulgaris est viri prudentia.
2. *Non parva est peccandi illecebra impunitas.*
   Impunitas peccandi maxima est illecebra.
   Nihil meum est, quod auferri potest.
   Meum id omne est, quod auferri non potest.

2. By turning the *Assertive* Speech into an *Interrogative*, and contrariwise *Interrogative* into *Assertive*: as,

(1.) *Avaritia vitium est sœdissimum.*
   Quod vitium fœdius est avaritiâ.
   Nihil est absurdius, quàm, quo minus viæ restat, eo plus viatici quærere.
   Potest quicquam esse absurdius, quàm quo minus,———
Acerba audire tolerabilius est, quàm videre.
   Annon est tolerabilius acerba audire, quam videre?
(2.) *Annon sunt incerti bellorum omnium exitus?*
   Omnium bellorum exitus incerti sunt.
   Id ne appellandum est onus, quod cum lætitiâ feras?
   Onus non est appellandum, quod cum lætitiâ feras!

(3.) By turning *Assertive* Speeches into *Admirative*, and contrariwise *Admirative* into *Assertive* Speeches: as,

(1.) *Omnia sunt misera in bellis civilibus.*
   Quàm misera sunt omnia in bellis civilibus!
(2.) *Quàm timeo quorsum evadas!*
   Quorsum evadas magnopere timeo.

4. By turning *Assertive* Speeches into *Exclamations*, and contrariwise *Exclamatory* into *Assertory* Speeches: as,

(1.) *Homo est admirandâ scientiâ.*
   O admirandam hominis scientiam!
(2.) *O fortunatos nimium agricolas, si———*
   Fortunati nimium forent agricolæ, si———

The better to enable him to make use of these Rules, and perform his Variation in Latine, it will be convenient to begin his Variation of Phrase in English, rendring one English into another of the same sense in other words. For instance.

In Affirmative Speeches.

I affect thee very much. I love thee very much. Thou art very much beloved of me. I have a very great affection towards thee. I have a very great love for thee. My love to thee is very great. My affection towards thee is very great. My love is very much set on thee. Thou art very far in my favour. O how I love thee! What an affection have I for thee?

In Negative Speeches.

It was not long of me that you were beaten. It came not through me that you were beaten. It was not through me that you were beaten. It was not because of me that you were beaten. It is not my fault that you were beaten. It is no fault of mine that you were beaten. I am not to be blamed for your being beaten. I was not the cause of your beating. I was not the cause of your being beaten. I did not cause you to be beaten. I did not cause your beating. Your beating was not caused by me. Your beating came not by the means of me. Your beating came not through my means. I occasioned not,—or, I was no occasion of your beating. Did I occasion your beating? Was I any cause of your being beaten?

In Interrogative Speeches.

What a Clock is it? How goes the Clock? How goes the day? What time of the day is it? How spends the day? What hour of the day is it?

In Epiphonematical Speeches.

Such truth is there in that old saying. Such truth there is in what was said of old. So much truth there is in that old saying. So true is that old saying. So true is that which was said of old. So truly was it said of old. So truly did they of old say. That truth there is in that old saying. With that truth was it said by them of old?

And once for all; if any desire any further Insight into this most profitable Exercise, he may consult Mr. *Clark*'s *Dux Oratorius*, written chiefly on that Subject; wherein, besides Rules of Variation, there are almost infinite of varied Examples: *Erasmus*'s *Colloquies*, *p.* 82. and *Edit. Londini* 1631. *Buchler*'s *Elegancies*, *p.* 111. Dr. *Robinson*'s *Phrases*, in the end: and the most accomplished *Comenius*'s *Artis Oratoriæ* five *Grammaticæ Elegantis*, *c.* 5. which most choice Piece I owe to the kindness of the worthy Mr. *Henry Edmondson*, then one of the Masters in the School of *Tunbridge*, and do recommend to the perusal of all young both Teachers and Learners. And thus much for Rules.

Now for Practice. The usual way, I presume, is to give the Learner Sentences of several forms, and put him to the varying of

of them. I condemn it not; it hath its use, its profit. But the Practice, that I would recommend, should be upon his daily Lessons: the Master first, by a line drawn underneath, noting to him what words and phrases are capable of such variation, as he hath Rules for, and then causing him to vary those words and phrases, according to his Rules, still informing and helping him in what he fails through want of memory or understanding. After he is a little experienced, he is to be put to find out of himself what words or phrases in his Lesson, are variable, and accordingly to vary them. This Exercise with a competent understanding, will in a short space produce a strange alteration to the better in all the Latines of the Scholar. This may be done on the Repetition-day; but the oftner the better. *Experto crede.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Elegancies of the Particles.

A Fresh variety of choice Phrases goes far in the Elegancy of a Latine Exercise, but nothing better sets it off than the interweavings of the *Particles.* These, like those Gold and Silver Filings, wherewith *Bassianus* strew'd the Roman Pavements, make a Latine smooth and radiant: or, as those upper Constellations do the Firmament, they bespangle an Oration, rendring it illustrious and glorious. One shall oft be ravished with admiration at the delicacy of a *Ciceronian* Period, and yet, when all comes to all, not be able to say, what more charmed, and took his Fancy, than the Orient Sparklings of some interwoven elegant Particles. This hath drawn so many Persons of excellent Learning not only to take especial notice, but write particular Tracts of the Elegancies of these. Not to insist on what *Robertus Stephanus* hath done in his *Thesaurus Linguæ Latinæ:* or *Laurentius Valla* in his *Elegancies?* or *Johannes Buchlerus* in his *Elegancies:* or *Jacobus Omphalius* in his *Elocutionis Imitatio & Apparatus,* or *Hadrianus Cardinalis* in his *de Modis Latinè loquendi:* or *Franciscus Sylvius* in his *Progymnasmata:* or *Edmundus Richerius* in his *Rhetorick: Godschalcus Stewichius; Horatius Tursellinus; Adamus Durrerus* and *Philippus Pareus,* have all written just Tracts particularly of these. A competency therefore of knowledge of the Elegancies of the Particles, and of skill to use them elegantly, cannot but be yielded by reason; and by experience will be found to be hugely conducing to the rendring of the Learners Latine elegant. With this knowledge and skill

I advise the Teacher by all ways and means upon all occasions to furnish his Scholars, what he may. And every Lecture, every Exercise will afford him matter for Observation. But the ready way, I conceive, is to furnish him with, and at convenient times read to him, some one or two Tracts of the Particles both of the *English* and *Latine* Tongue. For *English*, though I may not commend, yet I may mention mine own *Treatise* on that subject. And for *Latine*, I recommend unto him *Horatius Tursellinus*; or rather, as being later and better, *Philippus Pareus*, *de Particulis Latinæ Orationis*: which I wish were as common as it is good. And if the reading of these whole *Authors*, seem too laborious, and be like to take up too much time (though no time almost can be too much to be spent in so elegant a study) the Teacher may out of them, and his own Observation, make a short Collection, and give to his Scholar for his Use. And till he shall have made a better of his own, he may use this following.

Some Particles are elegantly used *for* other words, and some are elegantly used *with* other words. I shall speak first of those that are elegantly used *for* others. And of these some are more elegant where other expressions either are not elegant, or not so elegant: and some are elegantly used for others, which also may in the same sense be used almost, if not all out, as elegantly as they. I begin with the former.

Of Particles said to be more elegantly used where other Expressions are not so Elegant; if they be not, as sometimes they are, very Unelegant.

Rather say, *ad verbum*, than *de verbo ad verbum*: as, *Tabellas Latinas ad verbum de Græcis expressas.* Cic. 1. de Fin.

Rather say, *aliquando*, than *uno tempore aut altero*: as, *Illucescit aliquando dies, cùm tu*——Cic.

Rather repeat *alius* in divers Cases, than say, *Unus*, *uno*, or *aliqui uno*, *alii alio modo*: as, *Alius alio dicendi genere gaudet. Aliis alius vivendi mos est.* So repeat *aliud*, or *aliter*, rather than say *aliud*, or *aliter quàm*: as, *Aliud dicis, aliud cogitas. Aliter dicit, aliter facit.*

Rather say, *alius ex alio*, than *unus post alium*: as, *Aliud ex alio me quotidie impedit* Cic.

Rather say, *quis quid*, than *quis aliquid*: as, *Si quis quid rogavit, magna habenda est gratia.* Ter. *At vero gravitate membrorum, & cruciatu dolorum si quis quem levet, magnam ineat gratiam.* Cic. de Fin. l. 9. Though *quis* is used with *aliquid*: as, *Si quis aliquid ex sua re, atque ex suo sermone dixerit.* Cic. 2. Div. 40. *Si quis semel aliquid dixerit.* Id. ib. 52. And so *aliquis* is repeated with it self. *Ut in hoc quoque mundo nostro aliquid alicui par*

par sit. Cic. Ac. 4. 17. So rather say *quo vir*, than *quo aliquis*: as, *Quo enim quis versutior & callidior est, hoc invisior & suspectior detractâ opinione probitatis.* Cic. So rather say *cum quis*, than *cum aliquis*: as, *Cum quis invitus laborem suscipit, tum sentit graviorem.* So immediately after *nè, num, nisi, seu, sive*, use *quis*, rather than *aliquis*: as, *Ne quam patiar injuriam, opera mihi danda est. Num quas mihi affers literas? Nisi quæ me fortè fugiunt.* Cic. *Nisi quid aliud vobis placet.* Cic. *Si verum est* Fabium Labeonem, *seu quem alium id tenuisse.* Cic.

And lastly, after *sine* rather use *ullus, quispiam*, or *quisquam*, than *aliquis*: as, *Sine cujuspiam operâ; sine cujusquam auxilio; sine ulla pecunia.*

Rather say, *unus aut alter*, than *unus vel duo*: as, *Quid tantum est in uno, aut altero die?* Cic.

N. Yet *Cic.* said, *Horam unam, aut duas eodem loco armatos retinere.* Pro Deiot.

Rather say, *etiam num*, or *etiam nunc*, than *usque nunc*: as, *Quæritur etiam num quis eum nuncium miserit.* Cic. *Etiam nunc hic stas*, Parmenio? Ter. So rather say *etiam tum*, than *usque tunc*: as, *Cum etiam tum in lecto* Crassus *esset.* Cic.

Rather say, *hinc & illinc*, than *hinc & inde*: as, *Hinc & illinc exhibent mihi negotium.* Plaut.

Rather use *in dies*, or *in horas* after a Comparative Degree, than *magis, ac magis*: as, *Fit doctior in dies.*

Rather say, *maximè omnium*, than *plus quam omnes*: as, *Qui maximè omnium nobilium Græcis literis studuit.* Cic. So rather say, *minimè omnium*, than *minus quàm omnes*. as, *Quod quidem tu minimè omnium ignoras.* Cic.

Rather say, *minimum*, than *ut minimum*, or *ad minus*: as, *Ita sunt omnes partes minimùm octoginta una.* Cic.

Rather say, *non ita pridem*, than *non multo tempore ante*: as, *Nostrâ autem civitate non ita pridem dominatu regio liberatâ.* Cic.

Rather say, *non idem tibi & mihi*, than *non idem tibi sunt mihi*: as, *Non eadem vobis, & illis necessitudo impendet.* Sal.

To express a little time, rather say, *parumper*, or *paulisper*, than *parum*, or *paulum*: as, *Dum exiero, parumper opperire hic.* Ter. *Paulisper, dum se uxor, ut fit, comparat, moratus est.* Cic.

Rather say, *per hos dies, annos*, than *durantibus his diebus, annis*: as, *Nulla abs te per hos dies epistola inanis aliquâ re utili & suavi venerat.* Cic. *Quam provinciam tenuistis à prædonibus liberam per hosce annos?* Cic.

Rather say, *pridie quàm*, than *pridie quo*: as, *Pridie quàm excessit è vitâ.* Cic. So use *quàm*, not *quo*, after *postridie*; as, *Postridie intellexi, quàm à vobis discessi.* Cic.

Rather say, *præ*, or *præ ut*, than *in comparatione*: as, *Hîc ego illum contempsi præ me.* Ter. *Parum etiam, præ ut futurum est, prædicas.* Plaut.

Rather say, *pro virili parte*, than *quantum unus vir potest*: as, *Hæc qui pro suâ virili parte defendunt.*

After a Verb of doubting, rather say, *quin* than *quod non*: as, *Quod si acciderit, non dubitat, quin brevi* Troja *sit peritura.* Cic.

Rather say, *quoties*, than *quot vicibus*: as, *Quoties tibi extorta est sica ista de manibus.*

Rather say, *ut quisque*, than *secundùm quod quisque*: as, *Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillimè alios esse improbos suspicatur.* Cic.

Rather say, *semel & iterum*, than *semel & bis*: as, *Ut re semel atque iterum præjudicatâ condemnatus in judicium venerit.* Cic.

Rather say, *non temere est*, than *non sine quâ re est*: as, *Non temere est, quod tu tam times.* Ter.

Rather use *ultra*, than *ulterius*: as, *Si probabiliter dicentur, ne quid ultra requiratis.* Cic.

Rather say, *paucis diebus post*, or *paucis post diebus*, than *post paucis diebus*: as, *Paucis post diebus quàm* Lucâ *discesserat.* Cic.

Rather say, *ubiam*, than *in aliquo loco*: as, *Inde utrum consistere ubiam velit, an maveat transire, nescit.* Cic.

And thus much of Particles elegantly used where other Expressions are not elegant. I now proceed to the Second sort

Of Particles elegantly used, where others also may be used elegantly.

A is elegantly used for *pro*: as, *Vide ne hoc totum,* Scævola, *sit à me.* Cic. Also for *post*: as, *Quid antepones* Veneri *à jentaculo?* Plaut. Also for *contra*: as, *A quo periculo defendite, Judices, civem Fonteium.* Cic.

Ad is elegantly used for *usque ad*: as, Sophocles *ad summam senectutem tragœdias fecit.* Cic. *Inermes ad satietatem trucidabitis.* Liv. *Quod iis ad denarium solveretur.* Cic. Also for *circiter* and *circa*: as, *Homines ad quindecim* Curioni *assenserunt.* Cic. *Ad quæ tempora te expectem, facias me certiorem velim.* Cic. Also for *quod*: as, *Signa quæ nobis curâsti, ea sunt ad* Cajetam *exposita.* Cic. Also for *ante*: as, Clodius *abjectâ togâ, se ad generi pedes abjecit.* Cic. Also for *secundum*: as, *Ad arbitrium & nutum auditorum totum se fingit & accommodat.* Cic. Also for *præ* in Comparison: as, *At nihil ad nostram hanc.* Ter. Also for *post*: as, *Nescio quid interfit, utrum nunc veniam, an ad decem annos.* Cic. Also for *de*: as, *Postquam vos ad virtutem verba feci stis.* Symmach.

Adeo is elegantly put for *ità, tam,* or *tantùm*: as, *Adeòne hospes hujus urbis, adeò ignarus es, ut hæc nescias?* Cic. So *adeò non* is elegantly used for *tantum abest ut*: as, *Adeò ipse non violavit*

ut

ut summam curam adhibuerit, ne quis captivo corpori illuderet. Curt.

Adhuc is elegantly used for *præterea:* as, *Nisi si quid adhuc fortè vultis.* Cic.

Admodum is elegantly used for *omnino:* as, Curio *literarum admodum nihil sciebat.* Cic.

Alius is elegantly used for *diversus:* as, *Sed aliud quiddam longè aliud, Crasse, quærimus.* Cic.

At is elegantly used for *saltem:* as, *Si mihi republicâ bonâ frui non licebit, at cavebo malâ.* Cic.

Certè is elegantly used for *saltem:* as, *Homines mortem optare incipiant, vel certè timere desinant.* Cic.

Citiùs is elegantly used for *priùs:* as, *Vox me citiùs defecerit, quàm nomina.* Cic.

Cùm is elegantly used for *etsi:* as, *Cùm plus etiam contenderimus, quàm possumus, minus tamen faciemus, quàm debemus.* Cic.

De is elegantly put for *in* or *per* before words of Time: as, *In comitium de nocte venit.* Cic. Also for *super:* as, Regulus *de captivis commutandis* Romam *missus.* Cic. Also for *ob* or *propter:* as, *Flebat uterque non de suo supplicio: sed pater de filii morte, de patris filius.* Cic. Also for *quod attinet:* as, *De pace, sentio simulationem esse apertam.* Cic. Also for *secundum:* as, *De amicorum sententiâ* Rossius Romam *confugit.* Cic. Also for *pro:* as, *De imperio decertare.* Cic.

Deinceps is elegantly put for *deinde:* as, *De justitiâ dictum est; deinceps, ut erat propositum de libertate dicendum.* Cic.

Eâ re is elegantly used for *propterea:* as, *Is metuit, & eâ re fugit.* Cic. *Et eâ re id sequor.* Cic.

Eò is elegantly used for *ad id*, or *usque ad id:* as, *Eò redacta res erant, ut nulla amplius spes esset.* Cic. Also for *idiò:* as, *Illic homo aurum me scit habere, eo me salutat blandiùs.* Plaut.

Ergo is elegantly used for *causâ:* as, *Si quid contra alias leges ejus legis ergo factum sit.* Cic.

Ex is elegantly used for *secundum:* as, *Ex præceptis philosophiæ vita acta.* Cic. *Ut spero, statues ex dignitate nostrâ.* Cic. Also for *post:* as, *Ex consulatu profectus est in* Galliam. Cic.

Extrà is elegantly used for *præter:* as, *Extra ducem, paucosque præterea.* Cic.

Hoc with *quo* is elegantly used for *tanto quanto:* as, *Hoc audio libentiùs, quo sæpius.* Cic. *Quo difficilius, hoc præclarius.* Cic.

In is elegantly used for *inter:* as, *Hic in magnis viris non est habendus.* Cic.

Is with *qui* is elegantly used for *talis qualis:* as, *Itaque ego is in illum sum, quem me esse vis.* Cic.

Id quod is elegantly put for *quæres:* as, *Secedant improbi, secernant se à bonis, unum in locum congregentur, muro denique id quod sæpe jam dixi, secernantur à bonis.* Cic.

Ita is elegantly put for *hac conditione:* as, *Nam hoc ipsum ita justum est, si est voluntarium.* Cic.

Iterum is elegantly put for *secundo:* as, *Fabulæ vix dignæ quæ iterum legantur.* Cic. *Iterum ac tertio nominati.* Cic.

Juxta is elegantly put for *secundum:* as, *Juxta deos in tuâ manu est.* Tacit.

Licèt is elegantly put for *etiamsi:* as, *Licèt corpus absit meum, dignitas jam in patriam redierat* Cic.

Longè is elegantly used for *procul:* as, *Isti nuncii quàm longè sint, nescio.* Cic. Also for *valde:* as, *Longè mihi alia mens.* Sal.

Minùs is elegantly used for *non:* as, *At nonnunquam quæ prædicta sunt, minùs eveniunt.* Cic.

Næ is elegantly used for *verè:* as, *Næ illi vehementer errant.* Cic.

Nec is elegantly used for *non:* as, *Quo mortuo nec ita multo post, in Galliam proficiscitur.* Cic. *Nec enim illa prima vera est.* Cic.

Nihil is elegantly used for *non:* as, *Hoc tamen opus in apertum ut proferas, nihil postulo.* Cic.

Nisi is elegantly used for *veruntamen:* as, *De re nihil possum judicare, nisi illud mihi persuadeo.* Cic.

Nullus is elegantly used for *non:* as, *Memini tametsi nullus monitas.* Ter.

Nusquam is elegantly used for *nullo in loco:* as, *Ego verò nusquam esse illos puto.* Cic.

Ob is elegantly used for *ante:* as, *Mihi ob oculos exilium versatur.* Cic.

Omnino is elegantly used for *tantummodo* and *prorsus:* as, *Quique omnino fuerunt, qui illum absolverunt.* Cic. *Epulabar cum sodalibus omnino modicè.* Cic.

Omnis is elegantly used for *totus:* as, *Eo omni tempore Romæ fui.* Cic.

Parum is elegantly used for *non satis:* as, *Duas dabo, una si parum est.* Plaut.

Per is elegantly used for *ob:* as, *Neque sciebat, neque per ætatem etiam poterat.* Ter.

Perinde is elegantly used for *æquè* or *ita:* as, *Philosophia non perinde ac de hominum est vitâ merita, laudatur.* Cic. *Quæ perdifficilia sunt, perinde habenda sunt, ac si effici non possint.* Cic.

Præ is elegantly used for *ante:* as, *Stillantem præ se pugionem tulit.* Cic. Also for *ob* or *propter:* as, *Solem, præ sagittarum multitudine, non videbitis.* Cic.

Præter is elegantly used for *extra:* as, *Amicum sibi ex Consularibus neminem esse video, præter Lucullum.* Cic. Also for *supra:* as, *Attici in eo genere præter cæteros excellunt.* Cic.

Præterquam is used for *nisi:* as, *Nullam à vobis præmium postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam sempiternam.* Cic.

Pro is used for *ante:* as, *Illa præsidia, quæ pro templis omnibus cernitis.*

cernitis. Cic. Also for *in:* as, *Laudati quoque pro concione omnes sunt.* Liv. Also for *vice* or *loco:* as, *Tibi Marcelli statua pro patibulo fuit.* Cic. Also for *secundum:* as, *Civitatibus pro numero militum pecuniæ summas describere.* Cic. Also for *ob* or *propter:* as, *Pro hujus peccatis ego supplicium sufferam.* Plaut.

Prope is used for *juxta:* as, *Cùm plebs prope ripam Anienis consedisset.* Cic.

Propter is used for *prope:* as, *In pratulo propter Platonis statuam consedimus.* Cic. *Ipse cum liberis & colonis propter Aquilam adsistit.* Sal.

Quà repeated is elegantly used for *tum tum:* as, *Topiarium laudavi, ita omnia convestivit hederâ, quà basin villæ, quà intercolumnia ambulationis.* Cic.

Quando is elegantly used for *quoniam:* as, *Quam quando complexus es, & tenes.* Cic. So *quandoquidem:* as, *Quandoquidem tu istos oratores tantopere laudas.* Cic.

Quamvis is elegantly used for *quantumvis:* as, *Quasi verò mihi difficile sit, quamvis multos nominatim proferre.* Cic.

Quasi is elegantly used for *tanquam:* as, *Sic eas exponam, quasi ageretur res, non quasi narretur.* Cic. Also for *sicut,* or *non secus ac.:* as, *Quasi tua res aut honos agatur, ita laboras.* Cic. Also for *fere:* as, *Quantulus vobis videtur? mihi quasi pedalis.* Cic.

Qui is elegantly used for *ut:* as, *Nec tam sum insolens, qui me Jovem esse dicam.* Cic. Also for *qualis:* as, *Sed illum eum esse puto, qui esse debeat* Cic.

Quid is elegantly used for *cur:* as, *Sed quid ego argumentor? quid plura disputo?* Cic.

Quis is elegantly used for *aliquis:* as, *Negat quis? Nego.* Ter. *Ut, si quis quem oculis privaverit, dicat,*—Cic. *Ut, si quid cui simile esse possit.* Cic.

Quod is elegantly used for *quantum:* as, *Ipse (quod commodo tuo fiat) cum eo colloquere.* Cic. Also for *quantum id quod:* as, *Quod ad me scribis de Hermathena, mihi gratissimum est.* Cic. Also for *quia:* as, *Qui enim beatior Epicurus, quod in patriâ vivebat; quàm Metrodorus, quod Athenis?* Cic.

Quo is elegantly used for *quanto:* as. *Sed quo erant suaviores, eo majorem dolorem ille casus afferebat.* Cic. *Quo gratior tua liberalitas C. Cæsar, nobis qui illa videmus, debet esse.* Cic. Also for *ut:* as, *Quo facilius probaret illa Romani esse hominis, idcirco*—Cic.

Quomodo is elegantly used for *ut* or *sicut:* as, *Postulatio brevis, & quomodo mihi persuadeo, aliquanto æquior.* Cic.

Quocirca is elegantly used for *quamobrem:* as, *Quocirca bene apud majores nostros Senatus decrevit.* Cic.

Quippe is elegantly used for *utpote:* as, *Sol Democrito magnus videtur, quippe homini erudito.* Cic. *Convivia cum fratre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum nisi perraro veniret.* Cic.

Secun-

Secundum is elegantly used for *pro*: as, *Secundum nos judicari volumus.* Cic.

Sic is elegantly used for *talis* (in descriptions of Nature and Manners) *Sic est vulgus, ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat.* Cic. *Sic est ingenium.* Ter. *Sic sum, si placeo, utere.* Ter. *Qui sic sunt, haud multum hæredem adjuvant.* Ter.

Si is elegantly used for *an* as, *Dicito, si pascuntur aves.* Cic. Also for *etiamsi*: as, *Et me herculè, si nihil diceret, tanto officio me moveret.* Cic.

Sin is elegantly put for *sed si*: as, *Si ita est, omnia faciliora: sin aliter, magnum negotium.* Cic.

Sub is elegantly used for *paulo ante*: as, *Sub exitu vitæ.* Suet. *Sub lucem.* Virg. Also for *paulo post*: as, *Sub equestris finem certaminis, coorta est pugna peditum.* Liv.

Super is elegantly used for *de*: as, *Simulque cogites, quid nobis agendum sit super legatione.* Cic.

Supra is elegantly used for *ante*: as, *Illa, quam supra dixi.* Cic.

Tantùm is elegantly used for *solum*: as, *Nomen tantum virtutis usurpas: quid ipsa valeat, ignoras.* Cic. So *tantummodo.*

Tum is elegantly used for *deinde*: as, *Tum rationes in eâ disputatione à te collectæ vetabant me reipublicæ penitus diffidere.* Cic.

Ubi is elegantly used for *in quo*, &c. as, *Ut is cuique locus ubi ipse sit, miserimus esse videatur.* Cic. Also for *postquam*: as. *Ubi semel quis perjeraverit, ei credi postea, non oportet.* Cic.

Vel is elegantly used for *saltem*: as, *Postremò, si nullo alio pacto vel fœnore.* Ter. Also for *etiam*: as, *Per me vel stertas licet, non modò quiescas.* Cic. *Hoc in genere nervorum vel minimum, suavitatis autem vel plurimum.* Cic.

Velut is used for *exempli causâ*: as, *Bestiæ, quæ è terrâ gignuntur, velut Crocodili.* Cic.

Ultra is elegantly used for *præterea*: as, *Si probabiliter dicentur, ne quid ultra requiratis.* Cic.

Unde is elegantly used for *ex quo*, &c. as, *Equidem vobis fontes unde hauritis, atque itinera ipsa putavit esse demonstranda.* Cic.

Unus is elegantly put for *solus*: as, *In tuis summis laudibus excipiunt unam iracundiam.* Cic. And *unus & alter* for *duo*: as, *Venit unus, & item alter.* Ter.

Ut is elegantly put for *quomodo*: as, *Quid agit tua uxor? Ut valet?* Plaur. So *utcunque* for *quomodocunque.* Also for *sicut*: as, *Erat cùm litteris Latinis tum Græcis, ut temporibus illis, eruditus.* Cic. Also for *utpote qui*: as, *Ille, ut fuit semper apertissimus, non purgavit, sed indicavit.* Cic. Also for *licet*: as, *Verùm, ut hoc non sit, tamen servat rempublicam.* Cic. Also for *postquam*: as, *Ut ab urbe discessi, nullum prætermisi diem, quin aliquid ad te litterarum darem.* Cic.

Ut

Ut ut is elegantly put for *utcunque*: as, *Ut ut hæc sunt, tamen hoc faciam.* Ter.

And thus far of the Particles that are used elegantly for others, I now proceed to those that remain.

Of Particles which are elegantly used together with others.

Ab hath *usque* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Sed ab usque Tmolo ptivit.* Cic.

Absque hath *te* or *eo esset* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Nam absque te esset, ego illum haberem vetûm.* Plaut. *Nam absque eo esset, vetè ego mihi vidissem.* Ter. So, *Quam fortunatus cæteris sum rebus, absque una hac foret.* Plaut.

Ad hath *summam, extremum, postremum, ultimum* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Ad summam animo forti sitis.* Cic. *Nudus atque egens ad extremum fugit è regno.* Cic. *Ibi ad postremum sedit mâles.* Plaut. *Si fidem ad ultimum præstitissent.* Liv.

Æquè hath *ac, atque*, and *quam*, and *ut* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Quis esset tantus fructus in prosperis rebus, nisi haberes, qui illis æquè ac tu ipse, gauderet?* Cic. *Sed me colit & observat, æquè atque illum ipsum patronum suum.* Cic. *Neque ipsam amicitiam tuti possumus, nisi æquè amicos & nos ipsos diligamus.* Cic. *Itaque libentissimè prædicabo* Cn. Pompeium *studio & authoritate, æquè ut unumquemque vestrum pro salute meâ laborâsse.* Cic. *Noctibus illustribus æquè quam die cernunt.* Plin.

Alius and *aliter* have, *ac, &, quam*, and *atque* elegantly after them: as, *Irrepit in hominum mentes alia dicentis, ac significantis dissimulatio.* Cic. *Non alius essem atque nunc sum.* Cic. *Ne sim salvus si aliter scribo, ac sentio.* Cic. *Aliter, atque ostenderam, facio.* Cic. *Lux denique longè alia est Solis & lychnorum.* Cic. *Quid hoc est aliud, quàm tollere è vita vitæ societatem.* Cic. *Quod de puero aliter ad te scripsit, & ad matrem de filio, non reprehendo.* Cic. *Quod si fors aliter, quàm voles evenerit.* Cic.

At hath *verò, enim*, and *etiam* elegantly with it: as, *At verò* Titus Roscius *non unum sesellit socium.* Cic. *At enim istoc nihil est magis, Syre, meis nuptiis adversum.* Ter. *At etiam primo callidum & disertum hominem credidi.* Ter.

Contra hath *ac, atque*, and *quàm* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Ut contra, ac dicat, accipi & sentiri velit.* Cic. *Contra atque apud nos fieri solet.* Varro. *Contra, quàm nos suprà scripsimus.* Gell.

Cùm hath *tum* elegantly answering to it: as, *Sumus flagitiosè imparati, cùm à militibus, tum à pecunia.* Cic. *Quo audito, vehementer sum commotus, cùm de Syriâ, tum de mea provincia.* Cic.

Eo hath elegantly *quo, quod, ut*, and *quia* answering to it: as, *Non eo dico, quo mihi veniat in dubium tua fides.* Cic. *Eoque tardius*

dius scripsi ad te, quod quotidie teipsum expectabam. Cic. *Id autem eo facilius credebatur, quia simile vero videbatur.* Cic. *Marionem, ad te eo misi, ut tecum ad me quamprimum veniret.* Cic.

Etiam hath *nunc, num, ne,* and *tum* elegantly with it: as, *Etiam nunc statuere non possunt, utrum* —— Cic. *Quæritur etiamnum, quis eum nuncium miserit.* Cic. *Etiamne est quid porro?* Plaut. *Narrat, ut virgo etiam tum ab se integra siet.* Ter.

Facilè is elegantly joyned with *primus* or *princeps:* as, *Non solùm sui municipii, sed illius vicinitatis facilè primus.* Cic. *Eudemus, Platonis auditor, in Astrologia, judicio doctissimorum hominum, facilè princeps.* Cic. So with almost any Superlative Degree noting Praise or Dispraise: as, *Plato vir unus totius Græciæ facilè doctissimus.* Cic. *Perditorum hominum ita similis, ut esset facilè deterrimus.* Cic.

Jam hath elegantly joyned with it *à, inde à,* and *usque ab:* as, *Jam inde à Consulatu meo.* Cic. *Jam inde ab Aristotele.* Cic. *Vetus opinio est jam usque ab Heroicis ducta temporibus.* Cic. *Ut jam à principio videndum sit, quemadmodum velis pervenire ad extremum.* Cic. *Philocrates jam inde usque à puero mihi amicus fuit.* Plaut.

In hath several Substantives of *Time, Order,* or *Appearance* elegantly after it: as, *Consilia in horas mutari vides.* Cic. *In singulos dies crescit hostium numerus.* Cic. *non solùm de die, sed etiam in diem vivere.* Cic. *In proximum annum consulatum peteres.* Cic. So, *in præsens; in posterum; in futurum; in perendinum. Imperium per omnes in orbem ibat.* Liv. *In speciem preces jactantur.* Liv.

Interea hath elegantly *dum* and *quoad* joyned with it: as, *Interea dum hæc, quæ dispersa sunt, coguntur.* Cic. *Interea quoad fides esset data, Cæsarem facturum, quæ polliceretur.* Cæs.

Is hath *ut* and *qui* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Nec tamen is sum, ut mea me maximè delectent.* Cic. *Nullo modo is erat, qui nervos virtutis incideret.* Cic. 1. Acad. 10.

Id hath *ætatis* or *temporis* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Duo filii id ætatis.* Cic. *Id ætatis jam sumus, ut omnia fortiter ferre debeamus.* Cic. *Maximè quod is locus ab omni turbâ id temporis vacuus esset.* Cic. *Venit enim ad me, & quidem id temporis, ut retinendus esset.* Cic.

Ita is elegantly joyned with *non* or *nec* or *haud:* as, *Simulachra præclara, sed non ita antiqua.* Cic. *Nec ita multum provectus, rejectus Austro sum in eum ipsum locum unde conscenderam.* Cic. *Tibure haud ita multò ante mortuus est.* Liv. Also with *si, ne, ut ne:* as, *In fœdere additum erat, ita id ratum fore, si populus censuisset.* Liv. *Ita fugias ne præter casam.* Ter. *Sed tamen ita velim (ut nobiscum esse,) ut ne quid properes.* Cic.

Juxta hath *ac si, atque,* and *cum* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Tum reliquis officiis, juxta ac si meus frater esset, sustentavit.* Cic.

Absin-

Absentium bona juxta atque interemptorum divisa fuêre. Liv. Dec. 1. l. 1. *Juxta rem mecum tenes.* Plaut.

Licet hath *per* with his Accusative Case elegantly joyned to it: as, *Per me vel stertas licet, non modò quiescas.* Cic. *Sinatis hunc facere, dum per ætatem licet.* Ter.

Longè is elegantly joyned with words of Difference, Dissimilitude, or Excellence: as. *Longè aliter, atque à me dicta erant, detalerunt.* Cic. *Quod est longè secus.* Cic. *Vir longè post homines natos improbissimus.* Cic. Pætus *longè princeps municipii* Lucensis. Cic.

Magis hath *quàm* and *si* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Jus bonumque apud eos non legibus magis, quàm naturâ valebat.* Sal. *Magis dicas, si scias, quod ego scio.* Plaut. It is also elegantly joyned unto Substantives, as well as to uncompared Adjectives: as, *Nisi fortè magis erit parricida, qui consularem patrem, quàm si quis humilem necaverit.* Cic.

Maximè hath elegantly joyned with it *quàm, vel, quàm qui, ut quisque, ut cum:* as, *Dicere quàm maximè ad veritatem accommoda.* Cic. *Quæ quidem vel maximè suspicionem movent.* Cic. *Tam sum amicus reipublicæ, quàm qui maximè.* Cic. *Ut quisque maximè opis indigeat, ita ei potissimùm opitulari.* Cic. *Domus ejus celebratur ut cum maximè.* Cic.

Minùs hath *si* and *sin* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Si minùs necari, at custodiri oportebat.* Cic. *Quod si assecutus sum gaudeo: sin minùs, hoc me tamen consolabor.* Cic.

Minimè hath *omnium* and *gentium* elegantly with it: as, *Ad te minimè omnium pertinebat.* ——Cic. *Ah minimè gentium: non faciam.* Ter.

Mox hath *quàm* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Quàm mox navigo?* Plaut. *Expecto quàm mox* Chærea *hâc ratione utatur.* Cic.

Ne hath *quidem* and *nunc* elegantly going with it, and *dum* joyned to it: as, *Nunquam illum ne minimâ quidem re, offendi.* Cic. *Ne nunc senum convivio delectet.* Cic. *Satrapes si siet amator, nunquam sufferre ejus sumtus queat, nedum tu possis.*

Nec and *neque* are elegantly joyned with *dum, enim,* and *verò:* as, Cassius *ineptas literas misit, nec dum* Bibuli *erant allatæ.* Cic. *Neque dum* Roma *es profectus.* Cic. *Neque enim injuriâ metuebat.* Cic. *Neque verò mihi quicquam præstabilius videtur.* Cic.

Nemo is elegantly joyned with *homo* and *quisquam:* as, *Neminem hominem pluris facio.* Cic. *Nemo quisquam illorum ad te venit.* Ter. Also with *hominum,* and *omnium:* as, *Nemo est hominum, qui vivat, minus.* Ter. *Facio pluris omnium hominum neminem.* Cic.

Nihil hath *ne quidem* divided by another word elegantly after it: as, *Ad eas ego literas nihil scripsi, ne gratulandi quidem causâ.* Cic.

Nimio

Nimio hath *plus* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Sed quia nimiò plus te diligo.* Cic.

Nimium hath *quantum* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Huic generi orationis aspergentur etiam sales, qui in dicendo nimium quantum valent.* Cic.

Nisi hath *si, quis,* and *siquis* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Nisi si id est, quod suspicor, aliquid monstri alunt.* Ter. *Nisi quis Deus nos respexerit.* Cic. *Nisi verò si quis est, qui* Catilinæ *similes cum* Catilinâ *sentire non putet.* Cic. Also *quod, quia, ut,* and *verò*: as, *Nihil video quod timeam, nisi quod omnia sunt incerta.* Cic. *Non dubium est, quin mihi magnum malum ex hac re sit, nisi quia necesse fuit hoc facere.* Ter. *Nihil agam, nisi ut audiam doctorem tuum.* Cic. *Nisi verò paucos fuisse arbitramini, qui conari, aut sperare possent, se tantum delere posse imperium.* Cic.

Non hath elegantly joyned with it *quin, quo,* and *modo non*: as, *Non quin rectum esset, sed quia multò rectius fuit.* Cic. *Non quin à sit mihi quicquam carius, aut esse debeat.* Cic. *Tu id non modò non prohibebas, verùm etiam approbabas.* Cic.

Nullus hath *quin* elegantly after it: as, *Dies fere nullus est, quin domum meam ventitet.* Cic.

Nunc hath *denique* and *jam* elegantly with it: as, *Nunc denique amare te videor, antea dilexisse.* Cic. *Illum anabam olim, nunc jam alia cura impendet pectori.* Plaut.

Nunquam hath *ullus* and *quin* coming elegantly after it: as, *Nunquam ex tuis ullæ mihi literæ redditæ sunt. Nunquam unum intermittit diem, quin semper veniat.* Ter.

Nusquam hath *gentium* elegantly with it: as, *Immo equidem, nisi nunc hodie, nusquam vidi gentium.* Plaut.

Omnino hath *omnis, nullus, nihil, non* elegantly with it: as, *Vis & injuria, & omnino omne, quod obsuturum est.* Cic. *Omnino nulla constitutio, nec constitutionis pars, potest simul*——Cic. *Ut non multum, aut omnino nihil Græcis cederetur.* Cic. *Poetas Græcos omnino non conor attingere.* Cic.

Par hath *ac* and *atque* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Nec mihi par cum* Lucio *ratio est, ac tecum fuit.* Cic. *Si par in nobis hujus artis, atque in illo Pictore scientia fuisset.* Cic.

Pariter hath *ac, acsi, atque, atque ut, &,* and *ut* elegantly coming after it: as, *Pariter nunc operâ me adjuves, ac dudum re opitulata es.* Plaut. *Pariter ac si hostes adessent, incedere.* Sall. *Ecastor pariter hoc atque alias res soles.* Plaut. *Pariter hoc fit, atque ut alia facta sunt.* Plaut. *Nunc tu es mihi germanus pariter corpore & animo.* Ter. *Filius pariter moratus, ut pater.* Ter.

Per hath elegantly after it words relating to leave, power, person, time, manner, means: as, *Ne id quidem per legem facere potuisti.* Cic. *Cùm per valetudinem & per anni tempus navigare potueris.* Cic. *Per me vel furtas licet, non modò quiescas.* Cic.

Nihil

Nihil interest per procuratorem agas, an per teipsum. C. *Per tempus advenis.* Ter. Romæ *per id tempus duo maximi fuêre terrores.* Liv. *Per ludum & jocum aliquem fortunis evertere.* Cic. *Qui per virtutem perit, non interit.* Plaut. *Per insidias interficere.* Cic.

Perinde hath elegantly after it *ac, ut, acsi, quasi, atque* : as, *Non perinde, ac est merita, laudatur.* Cic. *Perinde erit, ut acceperis.* Cic. *Perinde, ac si virtute vicissent.* Cic. *Perinde quasi certi quicquam sit in rebus humanis.* Cic. *Nequaquam perinde atque in capta urbe, vagatus est ignis.* Liv.

Post is elegantly placed between a Substantive of Time, and his Adjective : as, *Paucis post diebus castra communivit.* Liv. Annibal *tertio post die, quam venit, copias in aciem eduxit.* Liv. *Multis post annis pecunia recuperata est.* Cic.

Præ hath *ut, quod*, and *quàm* elegantly with it, when Comparison is noted : as, *Parùm etiam, præ ut futurum est, prædicas.* Plaut. *Omnes res relictas habeo, præ quod tu velis.* Plaut. *Præ quàm quod molestum est.* Plaut.

Pridie and *postridie* have *quam* elegantly after them : as, *Hæc ego pridie scribebam, quam comitia fore putabantur.* Cic. *Quid causæ fuerit, postridie intellexi, quam à vobis discessi.* Cic.

Primùm hath *cum, nunc, ut, simulac*, and *omnium* elegantly joyned with it : as, *Cùm primùm in eam insulam veni.* Cic. *Equidem qui nunc primum huc venerim, satiari non queo.* Cic. *Ut primùm potestas data est.* Cic. *Simulac primùm niti possunt.* Cic. *Primùm omnium non te fugit.* Cic.

Pro hath elegantly joyned with it *ut, eo ac, eo acsi, eo atque si, eo ut, eo quod, eo quantum* : as, *Prout hominis facultates ferebant.* Cic. *Spero deos, pro eo ac mereor, relaturos esse gratiam.* Cic. *Pro eo acsi concessum sit concludere oportebit.* Cic. *Pro eo est atque si testis adhibitus non esset.* Ulp. *Pro eo ut temporis difficultas, aratorumque penuria tulit.* Cic. *Vereor nè parùm tibi, pro eo quod à te habeo, reddiderim.* Cic. *Pro eo, quantum in quibusque sit ponderis, æstimanda sunt.* Cic.

Prope hath *à* elegantly joyned with it : as, *Prope à meis ædibus sedebas.* Cic. *Quo propius aberat ab ortu, eo melius cernebat.* Cic. Also *ut* : as, *Prope fuit, ut Dictator crearetur.* Liv. *Prope est factum, ut injussu Prætoris, in aciem exirent.* Liv. *Prope adest, ut palam fiat.* Plaut. *Prope adest cum alieno more mihi vivendum est.* Ter.

Proximè hath *atque* elegantly coming after it : as, *Non possum ego non aut proximè atque ille, aut etiam æquè laborare.* Cic.

Quàm hath *ut* and *quomodo, contra, supra, infra, dudum, pridem, mox* elegantly after it : as, *Hæc sunt dicta subtilius, quàm ut quivis ea possit agnoscere.* Cic. *Multa præclara in eo vivo cognovi : sed nihil est admirabilius, quàm quomodo ille mortem Marci filii tulit.* Cic. *Quanquam quid ego de vestro jure contra quam proposue-*

ram disputabo? Cic. *Sæpe supra feret quàm fieri possit.* Cic. *Hoc est infra quàm illud.* Cic. *Quàm dudum tu advenisti?* Ter. *Quæso quàm pridem hoc nomen, Fanni, in adversaria retulisti?* Cic. *Demonstrat, quàm pridem sibi hæreditas venisset.* Cic. *Quid expectas quàm mox tgo eos dicam esse Senatores?* Cic. *Expecto quàm mox* Chærea *hâc oratione utatur.* Cic. It is also set with great elegancy before a Superlative Degree: as, *Sed peto à te, ut quàm celerrimè mihi libravius mittatur.* Cic. *Expositi quàm brevissimè potui oracula.* Cic.

Quin is elegantly used after Negative Particles, *Nemo, nullus, nihil, non*: as, *Nemo* Lilybæi *fuit, quin viderit; in* Siciliâ, *quin audierit.* Cic. *Dies fere nullus est, quin hic Satyrus domum meam ventitet.* Cic. *Causæ nihil dico, quin ita sit.* Cic. *Non quin dissentiam, sed quod*—Cic.

Quippe hath *qui, quia, quod,* and *cum* elegantly after it: as, *Conviviа cum fratre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quidem, nisi perraro veniebat.* Cic. *Ego verò laudo.* G. *Rectè sanè.* Cic. *Quippe quia magnarum id remedium ægritudinum est.* Ter. *Ibi multa de mea sententia questus est* Cæsar: *quippe quod etiam* Crassum *ante vidisset.* Cic. *Quippe cum præ te feras, tentare magis, quàm consulere Senatum.* Liv.

Quisquam hath *omnium* and *unus* elegantly joyned with it: as, *An hoc dubitavit quisquam omnium, quin is venalem in* Sicilia *jurisdictionem habuerit?* Cic. *Ne quisquam unus malis artibus postea tam popularis esset.* Liv.

Quisque is elegantly used after *se, suus, qui*; an Adjective Numeral; or a Superlative Degree: also betwixt two Superlatives: as, *Se quisque diligit. Suæ quemque fortunæ maximè pœniteat.* Cic. *In quo quisque artificio excellit, is in suo genere* Roscius *dicitur.* Cic. *Quinto quoque anno* Sicilia *censetur.* Cic. *Certè enim recentissima quæque sunt correcta & emendata maximè.* Cic. *Optimum quodque rarissimum est.* Cic.

Quo is elegantly joyned with *minùs*: as, *Nihil impedit, quo minùs id, quod maximè placeat, facere possimus.* Cic. *Quo minùs familiaris sum, hoc sum ad investigandum curiosior.* Cic. Also with *non*: as, *Non quo de tuâ constantia dubitem, sed quia mos est ita rogandi, rogo.* Cic.

Quod hath *si* elegantly with it: as, *Quod si nihil profecero, nihilominus maximo sum animo* Cic.

Quotus hath *quisque* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Quotus enim quisque Philosophorum invenitur, qui sit ita moratus?* Cic.

Secus hath *ac, acsi, atque,* and *quàm* elegantly after it: as, *Illud non dixi secus, ac sentiebam.* Cic. *Non secus acsi meus esset frater.* Cic. *Sed si aliquanto secus, atque in tradendâ arte dici solet.* Cic *Mihi autem erit maximæ curæ, nequid fiat secus quàm volumus.* Cic.

Si

Si hath *minùs*, and *maximè*, and *quidem* elegantly with it: as, *Si minùs supplicio affici, at custodiri oportebat.* Cic. *Hic noster vulgaris Orator, si minùs erit doctus, attamen in dicendo exercitatus.* Cic. *Si maximè statuæ essent dejectæ.* Cic. *O fortunatam rempublicam, siquidem hanc sententiam ejecerit.* Cic.

Similiter hath *ac, atque*, and *ut si* elegantly after it: as, *Similiter facis, ac si me roges, cur te duobus contuear oculis.* Cic. *Neque verò illum similiter, atque ipse eram, commotum esse vidi.* Cic. *Similiter facere eos, qui inter se contenderent, ut si nautæ inter se certarent.* Cic. The Adjective *Similis* hath the same Particles elegantly after it: as, *Nec similem habeat vultum ac si ampullam perdidisset.* Cic. 4. de Fin. *Verumque sit, simili nos affectos esse supplicio, atque eos, qui quondam*——Cic. de Philos. *Similem pavorem, indeque fugam fore, ac bello Gallico fuerit.* Liv. *Similis erit finis boni atque antea fuerat.* Cic. *Similésque sunt, ut si gubernatorem in navigando nihil agere ducant.* Cic. Thence Plaut. *Haud consimili ingenio atque ille est.* And *Liv. Consilia, haud dissimilia, ac si quis*——

Simul hath elegantly after it *ac, atque*, and *ut*: as, *Simul ac mihi collibitum est.* Cic. *Quod is simul atque sensit.*——Cic. *Simul ut videro* Curionem. Cic.

Sin hath *minùs* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Si perficiunt, optimè: sin minùs, ad nostrum Jovem revertamur.* Cic.

Sub hath *statim* elegantly with it: as, *Sub tas literas statim tuæ recitatæ sunt.* Cic. Pomp. *se legionem adducturum: sed non statim sub mentionem.* Cic.

Suprà hath *quàm* and *nihil* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Corpus patiens inediæ suprà quàm cuique credibile est.* Sal. *Ita accuratè ut nihil suprà.* Cic.

Talis hath elegantly after it *ac*, or *atque, ut*, and *qui*: as, *Honos talis paucis est datus, ac mihi.* Cic. *Tali atque hic est infortunio.* Ter. *Vita quidem talis fuit ut nihil posset accedere.* Cic. *Talem igitur te esse oportet, qui primum te ab impiorum civium societate sejungas.* Cic.

Tam hath elegantly after it *quàm, ut, qui*, and *quàm qui*: as, *Tam te diligit quàm si vixerit tecum.* Cic. *Non essem tam inurbanus, ut eo gravarer, quod vos capere sentirem.* Cic. *Quis est tam Lynceus, qui in tantis tenebris nihil offendat?* Cic. *Tam levis, quàm qui levissimus* Cic. *Tam mihi gratum id erit, quàm quod gratissimum.* Cic.

Tamen hath *ne* in an Interrogation elegantly joyned with it: as, *Tamenne ista tam absurda defendes?* Cic. Also *etsi*: as, *Quæ tamenetsi ita scripta sunt.* Cic. *Tamenetsi illuc mihi acerbum est, quia hero te carendum est optimo.* Plaut.

Tantisper hath *dum* elegantly after it: as, *Ego hic tantisper dum exit, te opperiar foris.* Ter.

Tantum hath *non* elegantly after it: as, *Tantum non ſtatim è funere ad negotiorum conſuetudinem redit.* Sueton. Alſo *abeſt*: as, *Tantum abfuit, ut inflammares animos noſtros, ſomnium iſto loco vix tenebamus*—— Cic. *Tantum abeſt, ut ſcribi contra nos nolimus, ut id etiam maximè optemus.* Cic.

Tum hath *demum* and *denique* elegantly after it: as, *Tum demum ſciam rectè monuiſſe, ſi tu rectè caveris.* Plaut. *Tum denique ſm beatas reſpub. putavit, ſi aut docti, aut ſapientes homines eas regin cœpiſſent.* Cic.

Ubi hath *primùm* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Ubi primùm eſt licitum, illico properavi abire de foro.* Plaut.

Vel hath *maximè* and *optimè* joyned elegantly to it: as, *Hoc uno præſtamus vel maximè feris*——Cic. *Cùm* Sophocles *vel optimè ſcripſerit, tamen*——Cic. 2. de Fin.

Verò comes elegantly after *ego, id, an, jam, immo, quaſi, minimè*, &c. as, *Ego verò, Servi, vellem, ut ſcribis, in meo graviſſimo caſu affuiſſes.* Cic. *Gratia Sexti Nævii ne Pub. Quintio noceat, id verò non mediocriter pertimeſco.* Cic. *An verò obliti eſtis, judices?* Cic. *Jam verò virtuti* Cn. Pompeii *quæ poteſt par oratio inveniri?* Cic. *Quid ergo? hoc ſolum auditione expetere cœpi, cùm id ipſe non vidiſſet? Immo verò alia complura.* Cic. *Quaſi verò priſcum aliquod, aut inſolitum verbum interpretaretur.* Cic. *Reprehendo igitur? Minimè verò.* Cic.

Vix hath *dum* and *tandem* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Vix dum epiſtolam tuam legeram, cùm ad me Poſthumius Curius venit.* Cic. *Ehem, vix tandem percepi ſuper his rebus noſtris te loqui.* Plaut. Alſo *aut ne* with it ſelf repeated: as, *Quæ propter exiguitatem vix, aut ne vix quidem appareant.* Cic. 4. de Fin.

Ultrà hath *quàm* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Exordium, ultrà quàm ſatis eſt, producitur.* Cic. *Servum graviſſimè de ſe opinantem, non ultra quàm compedimus coercuit.* Sueton.

Uſque hath *à, ab, è, ex, ad, in* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Uſque à mari ſupero Romam proficiſci.* Cic. *Siculo proſpexit ab uſque Pachyno.* Virg. *Uſque è Perſiâ.* Durr. *Qui ex ultimâ Syriâ navigarent.* Cic. 7. Verr. *Fugientes uſque ad flumen perſequuntur.* Cæſ. 7. B. Gall. *Legatum uſque in Hiſpaniam miſit.* Cic. pro Leg. Manil. Alſo *eo* and *adeo*: as, *Uſque eo ego illius ferre poſſum ineptias, & magnifica verba, verba dum ſint.* Ter. *Scitis omnes, uſque adeo, hominem in periculo fuiſſe, quoad ſcitum ſit, Sextium vivere.* Cic. *Quis huic urbi uſque adeo eſt inimicus, ut iſta diſſimulare poſſit?* Cic.

Ut hath *ſtatim* elegantly coming with it: as, *Philippus, ut heri me ſalutavit, ſtatim Romam profectus eſt.* Cic. So *primùm* and *conſeſtim*. Alſo the Superlative Degree of an Adverb: as, *Tum appellat hominem ut blandiſſimè poteſt.* Cic. pro Clu. Alſo it hath elegantly with it *non, ne, maximè, quiſque, quid*: as, *Fieri nullo*

nullo pacto poteſt, ut non dicas quid non probes. Cic. *Atque equidem orante, ut ne id faceret, Thaide.* Ter. *Poſtulant enim non ut ne cogantur ſtatuere; Quid igitur? ut ipſis ne liceat.* Cic. *Ut maximè inveneris*——Cic. *Ut quiſque maximè opis indigeat, ita ei potiſſimùm opitulari.* Cic. *De pugna, inquis, potiùs, quàm ſervias. Ut quid? Si victus eris, proſcribare; ſi viceris, tamen ſervias.* Cic.

And thus much of the Particles which are elegantly uſed together with others.

Now, as theſe are not all the Particles, whereof there be Elegant uſes; ſo neither are theſe all the Elegant uſes, that are made of theſe Particles: there being, as, many more beſides theſe, ſo, very much more obſervable (and nothing leſs elegant than what is here ſaid) of theſe. All I intended herein, was to give the Learner ſuch a taſte of theſe Delicacies, as might whet his Phancy to a more eager deſire after a fuller knowledge of them. Notwithſtanding, even theſe few well digeſted, will have ſuch influence upon all his Exerciſes, as that no one of them will be without ſome ſavoury reliſh of pure *Roman* Eloquence. Only I muſt caution the Teacher, that he patiently bear with, and gently correct his Scholars miſtakes in theſe things; which, until he be well verſed in them, he will, for want of judgment and experience, be apt to fall into. And this is all I ſhall ſay for the preſent of the Elegancies of the Particles.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Idioms of English and Latine.

EVery Language hath its *Idiotisms* and Proprieties, Phrases and Forms of speaking, peculiar to it self, which cannot be rendred word for word into any other Language but with much barbarity and baldness of expression. Thus however it is in English and Latine: insomuch that either way to be *nimium fidus interpres*, to stick too close to the Verbal Translation, will betray a man into ridiculous absurdities. Therefore to take the Learner off again from his nice insisting on Verbal Translating, and remedy those inconveniencies that come by his sticking too close thereto, it will be necessary to acquaint him with the *Idiotisms* of both the English and Latine, and shew him how to express himself in either Language according to the respective Proprieties thereof.

The one Precept in order to this, is, To heed the *Sense* more than the *Words*, and to fit the expression thereunto: That being well rendred, whether into English or Latine, whose sense is clearly and fully expressed in the Language whereby it is rendred, though the words be more or fewer than were in that, whence the Translation was made. Observation indeed hath the main stroke in this business. Yet sundry Helps may be administred. And for the ease of the Master, and profit of the Scholar, I shall set down such as I either conceive, or have found beneficial in this case.

One may be for the Teacher to observe unto him all the elegant *Idiotisms*, that accidentally occur in his Lectures and Exercises; and cause him to set them down in a Book, and often to review them, and repeat them.

Another may be, to put him to learn such Latine Authors, as are so translated into English, as that the propriety of both Languages is heeded unto and observed by the Translator, allowing him the use of the Translation. Such are *Tully*'s *Offices* translated by Mr. *Brinslie*, *Terence*'s *Comedies* by Mr. *Bernard*, *Corderius*'s *Colloquies* by Mr. *Hoole*, &c. and *Janua Linguarum* by Mr. *Robotham*.

A third may be to give him a Catalogue of English *Idiotisms* barbarously translated, and together with them, by way of correction, the elegant Translation of them; and labour to make him understand the ridiculous barbarity of the one, and propriety and elegancy of the other, after this manner.

Send

Send me word { Bar. *Mitte mihi verbum.*
Eleg. *Fac me per literas certiorem.*

I am ſhort of money { Bar. *Brevis ſum pecuniæ.*
Eleg. *Deficit me pecunia.*

Of this nature *Corderius* compoſed a whole Book, ſtyled, *De corrupti ſermonis emendatione*, which may be uſefully peruſed by any Learner, or young Teacher of the Latine Tongue.

A fourth may be for the Teacher; firſt, to read over himſelf every Engliſh, that his Scholar is to make into Latine, and to obſerve what *Idiotiſms* occur in that, and advertiſe the Learner of them, and ſhew him how to vary the Engliſh Phraſe into ſuch other expreſſion, as is capable of an Elegant Verbal Tranſlation.

But the fifth, (and that which I ever found moſt beneficial) is to give the Learner to Tranſlate ſome *Engliſhes compoſed all, or moſt of Idiomatical expreſſions*; ſuch as cannot, without moſt ridiculous barbarity, be tranſlated word for word into Latine: and to ſhew him, and make him underſtand the ridiculous barbarouſneſs of his own Verbal Tranſlations, and to furniſh him inſtead thereof with the proper and elegant expreſſions. When he hath gone over in tranſlating any one ſuch Engliſh, which would be of ſome pretty length, then cauſe him to be very exact in giving readily without book, Phraſe by Phraſe, the corrected Latine for the Engliſh, and the Engliſh for the Latine. Alſo make him conſtrue the Latine *verbatim*, ſo far as it may with good ſenſe be done (it were not amiſs to make him tranſlate it word for word, as far as may be) for this will help him ſtill more to the underſtanding of the Engliſh phraſe, and teach him how to reſolve ſuch Engliſh Phraſes, into other words and expreſſions of like import, and much facilitate the whole work. After that, cauſe him to tranſlate it over again, getting new Phraſes for every expreſſion; and if there be no new ſupply (which it is rare but there will be) let him vary what he hath, ſo as that it may ſeem new. And let him do again all the ſame with this ſecond Tranſlation, which he did with the former. And laſt of all, cauſe him (looking upon and reading his Engliſh, unleſs (which is better) he can ſay it without book) to give for every Engliſh expreſſion both ſeveral Latine Tranſlations. Then proceed to another; and ſtill to another of the ſame nature, ſo long as there ſhall be need or reaſon.

This Exerciſe, as it is of all others the moſt difficult, ſo alſo the moſt profitable. It is not imaginable what a ſtrange alteration to the better it will in ſhort time produce in all the Scholars performances. And therefore I do moſt ſeriouſly, above all

others, recommend it from my own experience unto the practice of others.

For the help of the Scholar in this work, there are of late sundry Books come forth, *viz.* Mr. *Clark*'s *Phraseologia Puerilis*, Mr. *Willis*'s *Anglicisms Latinized*; and last of all, my own *Idiomatologia Anglo-Latina*, or *English Latine Phraseologie*, in which, if the Learner should be put to get every day one Head of Phrases so perfectly at least, as that looking only on the English, he can give the Latine for it; and looking only on the Latine, can for it give the English, I say not how much his profiting would be in a short time, but leave it to tryal.

And for the ease of the Master, there are extant in Mr. *Clark*'s *Dux Grammaticus* (pag. 246, &c.) several *English Dialogues*, of such composition as I speak, ready for Translation; which, by that time the Scholar hath well gone through with, according to the way that I speak of, he will (by God's blessing on his pains and industry) have attained such a dexterity in Translating, that he will now be fit to be put to any performance, where his *Invention* shall be exercised henceforward for *Matter*, as his *Memory* all this while hath been for *Words*, being able to cloath his thoughts in proper Language, and so fit for the *Higher School*, where I shall leave him to the Master's skill and care.

But because that Book may not be to be had at every hand to be consulted with, therefore that the Reader may not go without an exemplification of the thing I propound; and withal, that I may contribute still somewhat more towards the ease of the Teacher, and use of the Learner, I have here added some new Dialogues of mine own contriving for that purpose: The Translation whereof, if performed according to the Idiome of the Latine, will be no unelegant Composition (as the Latines of them lying by me, if occasion were, would shew, which I forbear to publish, because the design of these is only to be Englishes for others to translate into Latine:) But if the Idiome of the Latine be not observed in the rendring, then the Translation will be bald and unelegant, and indeed not Latine, but a kind of barbarous and ridiculous Gibberish, like that which Petties and Puisnees are used to speak.

Certain

Certain Idiomatical Dialogues, contrived on purpose by the Tranſlation of them to bring off Children from the baldneſs of a Verbal Tranſlating.

DIALOGUE I.

Francis. John.

F. WHat ſays the World of me?

J. 'Tis the common ſpeech of the World, that you are too much given to the World.

F. This is the faſhion of the World, to ſay any thing of any man.

J. I believe you cannot tell which way in the world to help it.

F. Could I do it, it would be as acceptable to me as any thing in the world.

J. It is to no end in the world to go about it.

F. I had as lieve as any thing in the world, I could tell who were the Author of that ſlander. Let him go to the worlds end, I will reſolve to follow him.

J. Ah by no means in the world, you ſhall not do ſo: that would be a piece of the greateſt folly in the world.

F. I ſhould be the maddeſt man in the world, if I ſhould let ſuch a one as him ſcape ſcot-free.

J. There is nothing in the world more fooliſh than an angry man, who minds nothing in the world, but how to revenge himſelf of thoſe, that have done him wrong.

F. It makes me ſo mad to have ſuch a thing talked of me, that I neither know whereabouts in the world I am, nor what in the world to do, nor which way in the world to turn me.

J. It is one of the ſtrangeſt things in the world, that you ſhould be ſo angry for a thing of nothing.

F. I had as good be out of the world, as live to be ſo ſlandered in it.

J. You talk juſt for all the world, as if there were no where in the world any to be found, who were as ill talked of as you.

F. Go any whither in the world, and all the world over, you will find none who deſerves leſs than I do, to be ſo ill talked of.

J. As

J. As the world rules, you shall find few, but suffer as ill as you do. And this is no new complaint but now come up. In elder times *Socrates* and a world more, who are many years since gone to the other world, who yet will be well spoken of to the worlds end, were in every whit as bad a case as you. And he were the maddest man in the world, that should think not to fare as others do.

F. It is a world of wrongs that I have suffered in this respect: but there seems to be somewhat of reason in what you say; and therefore let the world go which way it will, I will resolve to take all well.

J. 'Tis Christian-like done of you: and when the world, and all things in the world shall come to nothing, then shall the benefit of this so great contentedness of yours be in being.

DIALOGUE II.

Charles. Anthony.

C. HOW do Horses sell here, *Anthony?*

A. They are things that a while ago would have given money, but now-a-days they hardly give any thing.

C. But Bullocks surely bear a price.

A. Truly within this few years they would have given something, but now they too are much fallen of price: Horses will give more than they yet. You may buy a good pair of Bullocks for eight pound.

C. And are Farms down of price too?

A. How should they be otherwise, when Corn gives so little? I have a piece of Land to sell; I am confident there is no better in all this Country, and that will give more, and yet I may go seek my Chapman.

C. How do you value it? set a price on it: I'le be your Chapman, if we can agree of price.

A. Take it for an hundred pound.

C. You are over dear of it; it is not worth so much. Give me your hand, here's fifty for you.

A. It is worth as much more, if a man might have to the worth of it.

C. Chuse it, I will not give a penny more for it.

A. And I will not take a penny less for it.

C. Then I do not believe we shall agree.

A. I cannot help that, unless I mean to undo my self, as God forbid I should. I stand not in so great need yet, I thank

thank God. No doubt but within a while Land will riſe of price again.

C. Will you take my money before I go? I will pay you down ready money.

A. I have told you my price. I cannot abate a Penny of it. If you like it ſo, I will be my words-maſter.

C. If that be your mind, I ſhall give over, and not give you one word more.

A. As you have a mind. I have told you my mind.

C. Then farewel, *Anthony.*

A. Farewel to you, *Charles.*

DIALOGUE III.

Edward. Andrew.

E. ANdrew, it gave me in my mind, there would be ſomewhat to do betwixt *George* and *Thomas*, before they had done and parted.

A. What's the matter, *Ned?*

E. It ſo fell out, that they fell out ſo, that it came at laſt to handy ſtrokes.

A. That's a bad matter; but who, I pray thee, got the better of it?

E. Though *Thomas* were the better Cuffer, and for a while had the better of it, yet at laſt they parted even hands. For if *Thomas* gave *George* a daſh on the teeth, and made him give back, *George* had a good heart, and well knowing what a ſtout man he had to do withal, behaved himſelf like a man, and would not give out, but gave him like for like.

A. What was the matter that they fell together by the ears?

E. *George* making his boaſt, that he was deſcended from a Knight, gave out, that he was come of as good a Houſe as *Thomas* was. Whereupon *Thomas* took *George* a box on the ear: and withal gave him warning to give over his comparing himſelf with him, who was of noble blood; and ſaid moreover he would give him as much more, if he took not heed.

A. What anſwer did *George* give him to this?

E. He only gave him a Challenge into the field, and then gave him never a word more.

A. In my mind they are both to blame.

E. And I am of your mind too: for they ſhould not have given way to their anger, but have given ſatisfaction to one another,

another, as reason was; in as much as Christ in the Laws that he hath given the Church, hath given us in charge not to do, but as we would be done unto: but they that wholly give themselves to pleasure, as most young men do, little mind the Laws of Christ, or give their minds to the keeping of them.

A. I hope they were made friends again.

E. Yes, that they were, and they are now as great friends as ever.

A. I pray you, who made them friends?

E. One that is a very great friend to them both, as they give out, came upon them, as they were fighting, and parted the fray betwixt them, and prevailed so far with them, that he made them friends. And from henceforth I hope they will be always friends.

A. In truth it was kindly done of him, and like a friend, to set them at one again.

E. Indeed it was done of him like a Christian: and no doubt but in time he shall get that blessing, which Christ in his Gospel hath promised to give unto the Peace-makers for it.

A. I give God thanks for it, that the matter ended so: for I was a little fearful what the end of it would be.

DIALOGUE IV.

Matthew. Adrian.

M. *Adrian*, how came that into *William*'s head to marry a Wife, that is so old, she is past Child-bearing?

A. In truth, *Matthew*, that I cannot tell now: but this I'le pass you my word for, that all is past and done between them, and that without many words passing on either side. And to say truth, so pretty a Woman she was, and so young to see to, that she might have passed for a Child-bearing woman.

M. I believe then, as matters pass, he hardly hath a Wife to his mind.

A. There is no day almost passeth him, but he wishes him unmarried again a hundred times over. But now 'tis past cure, he is undone: and though in times past he did ever pass his time in pleasure, yet must he now pass the rest of his life in trouble.

M. I am sorry the matter is brought to that pass. Though there were that said it would so come to pass, that he would repent him of his marrying, before three days were passed and come to an end.

A. For

A. For the moſt part it ſo comes to paſs, as indeed it needs muſt come to paſs, when men that are ſcarce paſt children, raſhly run on their own heads, and paſs not for the advice of their friends, who far paſs them in wiſdom and experience, by which they might more happily bring their purpoſes to paſs.

M. I believe it is come to paſs, as ſome men wiſhed, whom I think good to paſs over without mentioning. For my ſelf, I am paſt marrying, and ſo paſs not for my ſelf. Only I wiſh that ſome would take warning by others harms.

A. Let us let theſe things paſs, as things of no concernment unto us, and paſs away the time in other talk.

M. At preſent I am a little buſie, ſo that I cannot tarry any longer with thee: to morrow, and you pleaſe, we will meet again, and talk our bellyfuls.

A. Agreed. And in the mean time fare you well.

DIALOGUE V.

Mark. Paul.

M. I Wonder, *Paul*, what ſhould be the reaſon, that there was ſuch a quarter kept at *Geneva*.

P. Cæſar hearing, that the Enemy had broke out from all quarters, though ſooner than ordinary, drew his Souldiers out of their Winter quarters into the Field.

M. There was ſome reaſon for it. But where did they quarter?

P. About that time they had taken up their Quarters about *Marſeil*.

M. What became of that ſtir?

P. Cæſar beating up their Quarters all on a ſudden, put them into ſuch diſorder, that they preſently forſook their Arms, and took their heels, and ran away. Nevertheleſs a Quarter of the Enemies Army was ſlain.

M. What became of the reſt?

P Some eſcaped by flight: others were taken alive, and had quarter given them.

M. He played his part finely. But I had heard, there was no quarter given.

P. Nay, they that asked for quarter, had it: they only being killed that would not take quarter.

M. 'Twas Prince-like done: for as the Poet long ſince ſaid, It is the part of a Prince to ſpare them that ſubmit, but to bring down thoſe that ſtand it out.

D I A-

DIALOGUE VI.

Richard. Peter.

R. LET us consider, *Peter*, how far it may be fit for us to make our selves to do in this affair.

P. In truth I do not think it fit, that we our selves should be at the doing of it.

R. What else then do you think fit to be done then?

P. I think we must think of, and at a fit time send over thither a man fit for that imployment.

R. Money is fit: and I desire by all means that what is fit should be done: but I cannot think of a man fit to send: and this business is not fit to be put to every one, but one that is fit for the turn, and will do no more but what is fit.

P. You do as it is fit you should. But what think you of *Giles*, a man fit for any thing, and that can fit his speech to any turn; and who hath now got shooes so fit for his feet, that though a while ago he had a fit of the Gout, yet now he is compleatly fitted for going: may not he fit our turn?

R. He will do well for a fit: but sometimes he falls into a fit of talking, and then talks more than is fit, and so marrs all.

P. If his wit do but come and go by fits, it were more fit that lame *Giles* were let alone, and not sent at this fit.

R. 'T'is as I tell you.

DIALOGUE VII.

Thomas. George.

T. *George*, have you heard the news of *Robert*?

G. What? that he is over head and ears in love.

T. I marl who put it into his head to love that Wench. This mischief will fall on his pate, be he who he will be.

G. I imagine he went to her of his own head.

T. But do not he and *Richard* lay their heads together sometimes?

G. You have hit the Nail on the head.

T. Some mischief or other will light on their heads. But this it is to give young men their heads, who do things of greatest concernment, they care not how, and hand over head.

G. But

G. But, if it ſhould come into his Father's head, who is one of the heads of the people, that he had any ſuch mind, he would go near to break his head with his ſtaff next time he met him, though he were ſure to have a ſmart Fine ſet on his own head for it afterwards.

T. 'Twere more fit he were bravely leading Souldiers in the head of an Army, than ſo baſely lying in a Ladies lap.

G. In truth it is juſt as you ſay. But thus you ſee, the world rules. Farewel.

DIALOGUE VIII.

Cornelius. Tiberius.

C. LIſt to, *Tiberius*, have you read the Liſt of the Sword-players?

T. Yes, *Cornelius*, I have read it all over.

C. Hath *Siſennius* liſted himſelf among them?

T. He was not in that Liſt, that I ſaw.

C. 'Tis like he hath no liſt, either to enter the Liſts with any man, or ſo much as to run from the Liſts to the Goal.

T. Why ſhould a man undertake what he hath no liſt to? Let every man do as he liſts.

C. 'Tis a fine thing indeed for a man to live as he liſts: but that is not as every man liſts.

T. He may do what he liſts, that liſts to do but what he may.

DIALOGUE IX.

Giles. Humphry.

G. HOW now, *Humphry?* what makes you ſo ſad? is all well at home?

H. I would it were. For to tell you truly, we are in an ill taking for my Brother *Harry*.

G. What's the matter?

H. Wo is me! three days ago, without making any body acquainted with his purpoſe, he took Boat, and went over Sea; and what is become of him we cannot tell.

G. How can you tell that he is gone over Sea?

H. We were told it by one, whoſe word may be taken: and who came to us on purpoſe to tell us.

G. Is

G. Is your Father made acquainted with it yet?

H. Yes, we told him of all.

G. And what ſaid he to it? how did he take it? did he not take on, when he was told it?

H. We are ſomewhat afraid he ſhould take ſome harm by it, if we ſhould tell him: but he ſeemed to take it very patiently. He only ſaid, Since folly hath taken ſo deep root in him, that he will neither take my counſel, nor take example by others to do well, but ſtill takes bad courſes, let him take his ſwing for me, and take his courſe.

G. I was afraid he ſhould have taken it mightily to heart: but it ſeems he never takes thought, what becomes of him.

H. You are mightily miſtaken, *Giles*; for though he makes as though he did not grieve, yet it grieves him to the heart: and you may ſee it by his words, which, if you take them not in the wrong meaning, do plainly enough ſhew that he is ill vexed. Take my word for this, he is ſo troubled in mind, how cloſely ſoever he carry it, that he is quite taken off from buſineſs, and lets all be at ſixes and ſevens.

G. What courſe do you think your Brother will take now?

H. I ſuppoſe he will take his pleaſure as long as his money laſts, which he took up at uſe before he went, and took away with him, when he went. After, he muſt take his fortune.

G. While he takes theſe ſo wrong courſes, he hardly takes after his Father.

H. No, no; he takes not at all after him. He took a wiſer courſe.

G. But hath he not been uſed to take pains? or is he unable to take any pains?

H. He hath taken ſome pains in ſome kind of ſtudies, which ſome people are mightily taken with. And he muſt ſhortly take his choice, whether he will take pains, or ſtarve. For he hath afore now ſpent more money, than he took with him now, in leſs than a years time.

G. In my mind, it will be the beſt courſe he can take, to come back: and if he do, no doubt his Father will be glad to ſee him, and within a while take to him again.

H. God forbid elſe. Yet this I aſſure my ſelf of, that when times ſerves he will take him aſide, and take him up ſharply for his going away.

G. There is no doubt of this: and it will be but fit for him ſo to do.

H. God ſend he but come well home; and for the reſt I take no great care.

DIA-

DIALOGUE X.

Orbilius. Davus.

O. YOU, Boy, looſe this arrant Knave's Points, and down with his Breeches. I'le pay him ſoundly, and I live. Why don't you ſtir? Give me a Rod, ſome body, quickly. Go to, take him upon your back; up with him, I ſay, aloft.

D. Sir, will you puniſh me before you have heard me ſpeak for my ſelf? Do me right, or be no Maſter.

O. So I will: for I will ſerve you as you deſerve.

D. But that you may not abuſe me, hear me I pray you firſt, what I have to ſay for my ſelf.

O. As if you could ſay any thing for your ſelf, that were worth the hearing! a likely matter.

D. Truly, Sir, you cannot tell, until you have heard.

O. Say then quickly what you have to ſay.

D. This I ſay then, that you are too much in paſſion at preſent to do but right in puniſhing. For it cannot be, that he ſhould obſerve a meaſure in puniſhing, that keeps anger while he puniſheth. And therefore do as *Plato* did, who, as they report, ſaid to his Servant, that had done a fault, *But that I am angry, I would beat thee*: and let the puniſhing of me alone till another time. And do not go to beat me now in your anger; leſt you repent it afterwards when it will be too late.

O. How finely the Knave plays the Philoſopher? Well, that you may not hereafter ſay, you had to do with an unreaſonable beaſt, and not with a man of reaſon, I will let you alone for the preſent, and call you to an account hereafter, for what you have done amiſs to day. Let him down.

D. Thus far well, I have gained time; I may perhaps too get my pardon at laſt. In the mean time I'le have a care to offend no more.

A Threefold Latine Tranſlation of Mr. Clark's *firſt* Engliſh Dialogue *in his* Dux Grammat. p. 246.

Henry.

H. *What a world is this! what ſhould a man ſay to it? when every body falls thus foul upon poor and moſt harmleſs Innocents: 'tis all one, as the world rules, to be a knave and an honeſt man, now adays.*

R. *Indeed for the moſt part they fare alike: or rather the better a man is, the worſe is he dealt withal for the moſt part.*

H. *What wonder? when men are ſo given to lying, and follow wickedneſs, and give their minds to nothing, but to deviſe miſchief.*

R. *Men take ſuch bad courſes, that one knows not whom to truſt.*

H. *Before I take this at their hands, and put up ſo groſs wrongs, I'le do any thing.*

R. *You are as much to blame, in that you look to fare better. Ill will never ſpake well. Never take it to heart, man.*

H. *Why, what muſt I do then?*

R. *I would have you to follow my counſel, pleaſe God and your own conſcience, and do*

Robert.

H. HEm, quis hic rerum ſtatus eſt! quid dicas? cùm nemo non tam indigne in pauperculos ſummèq; innoxios homunculos impetum faciat; perinde eſt, ut nunc fit, utrum nebulo ſis, an vir bonus, hoc tempore.

R. Reverà utriſque eodem magnam partem uſu-veniunt: vel potiùs quantò ſanctioribus quis moribus vixerit, tantò ferè modis indignioribus tractatur.

H. Quid mirum! cùm ita ſint plerique proclives ad mentiendum, & ad flagitium quodvis perpetrandum, nec ad *aliud* quicquam adjiciant animum, quàm ad malum moliendum.

R. Ita pravis vivitur moribus, ut parum conſtet cui quis fidem habeat.

H. Potiùs quàm iſtuc ab iis accipiam, atque impunè fieri mihi tam inſignitèr injuriam patiar, omnia agam [omnem movebo lapidem.]

R. Simili ipſe in culpâ verſaris meliore qui loco tuas fore res expectes. Mala mens, mala lingua. Ne te propterea affligas: [animi angas.]

H. Quid itaque mihi agendum eſt?

R. Meo de conſilio velim facias, Deo, animiq; tui conſcientiæ placeas, & quam es nactus, hanc

your duty in your place.

H. *If a man be taken tardy, and do amiß but once, he is ſure to hear of it at every hand.*

R. *Be ruled by me, and never take that to heart, that they ſet at their heels, and care not a pin for them all.*

H. *'Tis not ſo eaſie a matter as you think, to take theſe things well. God give us patience, for we ſtand in great need thereof.*

R. *Indeed they had as good take a man's Purſe by the high-way ſide, as to rob him of his good name; and they might even as well hang him out-right, as thus to uſe him.*

H. *'Tis as diſhonourable, for they muſt anſwer at God's Judgment-ſeat for the one, as well as at earthly Bars for the other.*

R. *'Tis no very ſtrange thing, for thus have they done with the beſt men ever ſince the Apoſtles times.*

H. *And for any thing I ſee, there is ſmall hope of mends, men rather grow worſe and worſe.*

R. *Be you content therefore, mind your calling, look to your book, ſtudy hard, and follow learning for all that men ſay or do of you.*

H. *I ſee now he muſt riſe betimes that pleaſeth all. Farewell.*

hanc provinciam ornes.

H. Si quis oſcitans opprimatur, unicâq; vel vice titubaverit, non dubium eſt quin magno ei paſſim probro futurum ſit.

R. Auſculta mihi, nec ſit ea tibi res ſolicitudini, quam illi ſuſque déque habent, quin eos omnes non tanti æſtimes.

H. Haud ita eſt facile, ac tibi videtur, æquo iſta animo tolerare. Donet nobis Deus patientiam; nam illa multum nobis opus eſt.

R. Unum ſanè & idem hoc eſt, regiâ eunti viâ marſupium auferre, atq; bonam ejus exiſtimationem lædere; quin æquè eum vel patibulo ſuſpendant, atque modis ita indignis accipiant.

H. Æquè inhoneſtum eſt, tam enim alterius reddenda eſt ab iis ratio pro tribunali divino, quàm alterius in foro humano.

R. Non magnopere mirandum eſt, hoc enim pacto cum virorum optimis ab Apoſtolicis jam uſq; temporibus egerunt.

H. Et quantum ego perſpicio, quàm exigua illorum corrigendi ſpes eſt, potiùs indies in pejus proficiunt.

R. Quin tu ergo acquieſce, res tuas ſedulò age, ſummam in libros curam impende, animum ad rei literariæ ſtudium diligenter adjunge, plurimúmq; confer operæ ad conſequendam eruditionem, ut ut de te populi ſermo ſit.

H. Experior jam perquam eſſe difficile placere omnibus. Vale.

Henricus.

H. QUæ hujus mundi conditio eſt? quid ſentias? cùm tantis illi paſſim injuriis afficiantur pauperum qui maximè ſunt innocui; eódem recidit, quomodo nunc eſt, frugine quis, an nequam homo ſit, his temporibus.

R. Si nihil ſunè uterq; eorum magnâ ex parte patiuntur; ſeu potiùs quo quis vir præſtantior fuerit, hoc plurimùm deteriùs cum illo agitur.

H. Quid hoc monſtri eſt? cùm adeò ſtrenua detur à pleriſque opera mendaciis confingendis omnibúſq; vitæ turpitudinibus in ſe admittendis, neq; adjungatur ad aliud quicquam animus niſi ad perniciem comminiſcendam.

R. Sic flagitioſa à pleriſque omnibus vita agitur, ut incertum ſit in quo fiducia reponatur.

H. Priùs quàm æquo iſthuc animo feram, adeóque inſigni mè injuriâ affici inultus perpetiar, nihil non experiar [cœlo terram miſcebo.]

R. Tam in vitio ipſe es, quòd melius actum iri tecum ſperas. Malevoli, maledici. Ea noli re te macerare [agritudini dedere.]

H. Quid me ergo facere oportet?

R. Quod ego tibi dedero conſilium, id exſequere, Divino numini mentíq; tuæ recti conſcientiæ obſecunda, tuúmq; pro loci tui ratione officium cole.

Robertus.

H. QUal'is eſt hæc rerum facies! quid cui poſſit in mentem venire? quando in pauperiorum quoſque innocentiores tam fœdè undique à quibuſq; incurritur; tantundem eſt, ut mores ſunt, ſive quis probus ſive improbus fuerit, nunc dierum.

R. Profectò pariter cum utroque maximam partem agitur; ſive potiùs quo quis homo melior audit, eo plerunque pejora patitur.

H. Haud mirabile eſt: quando tam ſunt homines proni ad mendacia excogitanda, & improbiſſima quæque facinora facienda, atque ad nihil applicant animum præterquam machinandum aliis peſtem.

R. Adeò pravis plerique utuntur conſiliis, ut neſcias cui fidem habeas.

H. Citiùs quàm ego iſthuc boni conſulam, tantámque factam mihi injuriam impuniram dimittam, nihil intactum relinquam [Acheronta movebo.]

R. Tua non minor culpa eſt, cùm rectiùs iri tibi conſultum vis. Malevolorum nunquam non malus fermo. Hæc te res nè malè habeat [cave cordi tuo doleat.]

H. Quid igitur debebo ego facere?

R. Meam velim auctoritatem & conſilium ſequare. Deo propriæq; mentis conſcientiæ morem geras, ac tuum quo es loco munus ſedulus præſtes.

H. Si

H. Si quis delictum in se admisisse offendatur, semélq; unquam perperam egerit, non deerunt, qui id ei primâ quâque occasione exprobrent.

R. Me audi, neque ullâ sis de eo solicitudine, quod hi pro nihilo ducunt, atque universos illos flocci facias.

H. Majoris est res negotii quàm tu opinaris, æqui boniq; hæc consulere. Patientiâ donet nos Deus, hâc enim nos quàm maximè egemus.

R. Una profectò res est sive cui nummos regiam secus viam adimant, sive existimationi ejus infamiæ maculam inurant, imò satius esset, ut è vestigio eum suspendio strangulent, quàm tantâ contumeliâ excipiant.

H. Perinde est inglorium; æquè enim respondendum est illis de altero ad Dei tribunal, atque de altero ad cancellos forenses.

R. Minimè mirum est, nam ad hunc modum spectatissimos quosque viros jam inde ab ipsis Apostolis tractârunt.

H. Quantum verò ego intelligere possum, fore ut in meliores evadant vix est sperandum, magis in deterius quotidie à plerisque degeneratur.

R. Tu itaque contentus sorte

H. Facinore si in ullo deprehendaris, atque omnino semel lapsus fueris, id tibi ab omnibus, prout res se tulerit, vitio vertetur.

R. Mihi obtempera, nolique ob illud tuum solicitare animum, quod isti sibi despicatui habent, sed illos cunctos nec pili pendas.

H. Non adeò expedita res est atque tu existimas, hæc humaniter ferre. Impartiat nobis Deus patientiam, etenim nos hujus vehementer indigemus.

R. Reverà nihil interest utrum aliquem regiam juxta viam pecuniis exuant, an ignominiæ sordibus ejus famam deturpent, quinetiam eâdem operâ ei laqueo gulam frangant, quâ illum tam indignè tractant.

H. Nihilo minus est infame, nam tam debebunt Deo reddere rationem de altero, quàm de altero hominibus.

R. Non est hoc adeò monstri simile, quandoquidem ipsis jam inde usque ab Apostolis ita cum optimis quibusque viris agi solitum est.

H. Atque ut mea perspicientia est, vix est ut speres futurum, ut unquam corrigantur, potiùs in pejus magis magisque prolabuntur.

R. Æqui igitur bonique tu

isthæc

quâ abi, munus tuum dignè administra, strenuam in libris operam pone, in studia tua diligenter incumbe, omnéque in doctrinâ consequendâ tempus tuum colloca, quicquid de te ab aliis dicatur, agatúrve.

H. Nunc perspicio multi esse rem laboris nemini displicere.

isthæc consule, tuum quod tibi datum est pensum confice, libris tuis animum intende, in studiis tuis omnes industriæ tuæ nervos contende, bonisq; te totum literis dede, quocunque te homines loco, numeróve habeant.

H. Compertum habeo jam maximo esse illi opere annitendum cui in animo est omne ut punctum ferat.

FINIS.

Books Printed for and Sold by *Tho. Sawbridge*, at the Three Golden *Flower-de-luces*, in *Little Britain:*

M. T. Ciceronis Opera quæ extant omnia: Ex ſola fere Codd. Mſſ. Fide emendata. Studio atque induſtriâ *Jani Gulielmii* & *Jani Gruteri*: Quorum *Annotata* omnia, priùs in calce Operis congeſta, ſuæ nunc cuique paginæ ſubjiciuntur. Adjungitur item *Frobenii Penu Tullianum* decem Indicibus ſummâ cum curâ huic Editioni adaptatis comprehenſum. Juxta Exemplar Hamburgenſe. *Folio.*

Clavis Græcæ Linguæ, tribus Partibus diſtincta: Quarum,

I. *Breves Sententiæ Græcæ, Latinè Explicatæ, quibus omnia Græcæ Linguæ Primitiva, quocunque modo inclusa, comprehenduntur.*

II. *Omnes totius Linguæ Græcæ Voces Primogeniæ, in vulgari Lexico occurrentes, Alphabeticè diſponuntur; nec non earundem Derivata præcipua ſubjunguntur.*

III. *Vocabula Latino-Græca.*

Opuſculum apprimè utile, & maximè accommodum iis qui Linguæ Græcæ ſtudio capiuntur. Autore *Eilardo Lubino.* Editio noviſſima, ſuperioribus omnibus multò repurgatior, & locupletior reddita. Operâ & Curâ *J. H.* & *W. D. Octavo.*

Idiomatologia Anglo-Latina, ſive Dictionarium Idiomaticum Anglo-Latinum: In quo Phraſes, tam Latinæ quàm Anglicanæ Linguæ ſibi mutuò reſpondentes, ſub certis quibuſdam Capitibus ſecundum Alphabeti ordinem è regione collocantur. In uſum tam Peregrinorum, qui Sermonem noſtrum Anglicanum, quàm Noſtratium, qui Latinum Idioma callere ſtudent. Tertia Editio. Cui acceſſit iſtiuſmodi Phraſium & Idiomatum additio in Utraque Lingua ad minus trium millium. Operâ, Studio, & Induſtriâ *Gulielmi Walker*, S. T. B. *Octavo.*

Mythologia Æſopica: In qua *Æſopi* Fabulæ Græco-Latinæ CCXCVII. Accedunt *Babriæ Fabulæ* etiam Auctiores. Secundum Editionem *Iſaaci Nicolai* Niveleti. Præponitur Hiſtoria Vitæ, Morum, Fortunæ, & Interitûs *Æſopi.* Compoſita ſtudio *Joachimi Camerarii:* Et adjicitur Cebetis Tabula. In Uſum Scholæ *Etonenſis.* 12°.

Campanologia: Or the Art of Ringing improved. With plain and eaſie Rules to guide the Practitioner in the Ringing all kind of *Changes.* To which is added great variety of *New Peals.* The Third Edition, with Additions. *Octavo.*

350/4/B11